

# A New Unitary RG-based Auxiliary Model Approach to Strongly-Correlated Systems

Abhirup Mukherjee, Siddhartha Lal

Indian Institute of Science Education and Research Kolkata, Mohanpur

March 28, 2022

# Contents

<b>Contents</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1 Introduction</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1 What is the minimal impurity model for a Mott metal-insulator transition?	3
1.2 Philosophy of auxiliary model methods	4
1.3 A "bottoms-up" approach to using auxiliary models	6
<b>2 Physics of the generalised single-impurity Anderson model</b>	<b>8</b>
2.1 Introduction of spin-exchange and charge isospin-exchange interactions into the SIAM: the generalised SIAM	8
2.2 RG equations for generalised SIAM	10
2.3 Nature of coupling RG flows	10
2.4 Effective Hamiltonian and ground state	12
2.5 Approach towards the thermodynamic limit	14
2.6 Effective temperature scale at the fixed point	15
2.7 Impurity susceptibilities	16
2.8 Specific heat	18
2.9 Renormalization of impurity spectral function	19
2.10 Effective Hamiltonian for excitations of the Kondo cloud	22
2.11 Obtaining the real space low energy Hamiltonian: the local Fermi liquid	27
2.12 Destruction of the Abrikosov-Suhl resonance: passage from strong coupling to local moment	33
2.13 Calculating the $T = 0$ Wilson ratio from low energy excitations	38
2.14 Luttinger's and Friedel's sum rules	41
2.15 Reverse RG analysis	46
<b>3 Effect of minimal attractive correlation in the bath</b>	<b>50</b>
3.1 The modified hamiltonian	50
3.2 RG Equations	50
3.3 Phase diagram	51
3.4 Evolution of the groundstate across the transition	52
3.5 Evolution of various correlation measures and other quantities	54
3.6 Spectral functions	57
<b>4 From the auxiliary model to the bulk - single site approach</b>	<b>61</b>
4.1 Creating $N$ -site Hubbard Hamiltonian from Anderson impurity embedded in an interacting bath	61
4.2 Single-particle Green's function	62
4.3 Spectral functions and self-energies	64
4.4 Evidence for the Mott MIT	65
4.5 Important Remarks	68
4.6 Analytic consistency check - On the Bethe lattice	70
<b>5 Going to larger clusters - the two site approach</b>	<b>71</b>
5.1 Why expand the cluster?	71
5.2 Solution of the Hubbard dimer using the Anderson molecule	71
5.3 Creating $N$ -site Hubbard Hamiltonian from Hubbard dimer embedded in a bath	73
5.4 Single-particle Green's function	76

5.5	Spectral functions and self-energies . . . . .	79
5.6	Analytic consistency checks . . . . .	81
<b>6</b>	<b>Future goals</b>	<b>83</b>
<b>A</b>	<b>Derivation of RG equations</b>	<b>84</b>
A.1	$U_b$ -free terms . . . . .	84
A.2	$U_b$ -included terms . . . . .	88
<b>B</b>	<b>Some analytic results for the Hubbard dimer and the Hubbard model</b>	<b>92</b>
B.1	Spectrum of the Hubbard dimer . . . . .	92
B.2	Greens function of Hubbard model in the atomic limit . . . . .	92
B.3	Local Greens function for the Hubbard dimer . . . . .	93
B.4	Contributions of various excitations to the site local spectral function . . . . .	95
<b>C</b>	<b>Simple results for the Greens functions</b>	<b>96</b>
C.1	Relation between single-particle Greens function and the Greens function operator ( $T = 0$ ) . . . . .	96
C.2	Writing single-particle excitations of ground state in terms of $N = 3, S^z = \frac{1}{2}$ eigenstates . . . . .	97
C.3	Matrix elements of $G^{-1}$ between single-particle momentum excitations, for the Hubbard dimer . . . . .	97
<b>D</b>	<b>Zero temperature Greens function in frequency domain</b>	<b>98</b>
<b>E</b>	<b>Topological interpretation of the Wilson ratio</b>	<b>100</b>
	<b>Bibliography</b>	<b>102</b>

# Chapter 1

## Introduction

### 1.1 What is the minimal impurity model for a Mott metal-insulator transition?

The Hubbard model is one of the fundamental models for strong electronic correlation; in its simplest form, it features a single band of conduction electrons hopping on a lattice and interacting via local correlations that provide a cost  $U$  if any site is doubly occupied:

$$H_{\text{Hubb}} = -t \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle, \sigma} (c_{i\sigma}^\dagger c_{j\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + U \sum_i \hat{n}_{i\uparrow} \hat{n}_{i\downarrow} - \mu \sum_{i,\sigma} \hat{n}_{i\sigma}$$

The model can be made particle-hole symmetric by choosing  $\mu = U/2$ :

$$H_{\text{Hubb}} = -t \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle, \sigma} (c_{i\sigma}^\dagger c_{j\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) - \frac{U}{2} \sum_i (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2$$

There are two trivial limits of the model. At  $U = 0$ , the bath consists of just a kinetic energy part, and the ground state is just a filled Fermi sea. At  $t = 0$ , each lattice site decouples from the rest and becomes a local moment, which under symmetry-breaking becomes a Neel antiferromagnet. This suggests that on increasing  $U/t$  beyond some critical value, the system might undergo a phase transition from a metallic state to an insulating state [1]. This transition is reflected in the local spectral function - while it has a well-defined zero energy peak in the metallic phase, it is gapped in the insulating phase.

One method of studying Hubbard models is through auxiliary models, described in the next section. Auxiliary models are simpler versions of the full Hamiltonian that are able to capture the essential physics. For eg, a correlated impurity interacting with a conduction bath is a potential auxiliary model for the Hubbard Hamiltonian:

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{SIAM}} = \epsilon_d \hat{n}_d + U \hat{n}_{d\uparrow} \hat{n}_{d\downarrow} - t \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle, \sigma} (c_{i\sigma}^\dagger c_{j\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + V \sum_{\sigma} (c_{d\sigma}^\dagger c_{0\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) \quad (1.1.1)$$

The impurity has onsite energy  $\epsilon_d$  and an onsite correlation  $U$ . It hybridises into the bath through  $V$ .

If the impurity site hybridises with a *non-interacting* bath defined by a uniform density of states, the impurity spectral function is found to have a well-defined Kondo resonance at low temperatures. Increasing the impurity correlation  $U$  only serves to reduce the width of the central peak at the cost of the appearance of side bands at energy scales of the order of  $U$ , but the resonance never dies. The situation is however different if the impurity is embedded in a correlated conduction bath with a non-trivial density of states. For the case of a conduction band with the DOS shown in the right of the figure below, the impurity hybridises into a reduced bandwidth because of the correlation on the lattice [2].

This difference in the type of conduction baths is utilised in dynamical mean-field theory to describe various phases of the bulk system. This is done through the DMFT algorithm: one starts with a non-interacting bath, but depending on the value of  $U$ , the conduction bath then gets modified and we ultimately end up with something that is different from what we started with. For small  $U$ , the bath does not change much and we retain the central resonance of the impurity spectral function. This then describes a metal in the bulk. For larger values of  $U$ , however, the bath changes significantly such that its density of states becomes non-constant. Above a critical  $U_c$ , the impurity spectral function gets gapped out, and that then describes the insulating phase in the bulk. *This leaves open the following question: What is the minimal correlation one can insert into the non-interacting bath (of a single-impurity Anderson model) that can capture both the metallic and insulating phases of the bulk model?*

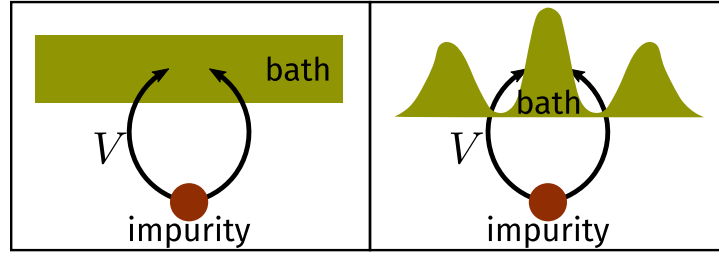


Figure 1.1: Various kinds of bath that an impurity can hybridise into. The left panel shows a non-interacting conduction band with a flat density of states. The right panel shows an interacting bath with an energy-dependent density of states. In the latter case, the impurity "feels" a reduced effective bandwidth defined by the width of the central peak.

## 1.2 Philosophy of auxiliary model methods

The present method is a realisation of the general method of using simpler systems called auxiliary models to study bulk systems [3]. In general, a full Hamiltonian can be separated into the Hamiltonians for a particular subsystem  $S$ , the rest of the system  $R$ , and the interactions between  $S$  and  $R$ .

$$\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}_S |S\rangle \langle S| + \mathcal{H}_R |R\rangle \langle R| + \mathcal{H}_{SR} |S\rangle \langle R| + \mathcal{H}_{RS} |R\rangle \langle S| = \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{H}_R & \mathcal{H}_{RS} \\ \mathcal{H}_{SR}^* & \mathcal{H}_S \end{bmatrix} \quad (1.2.1)$$

where  $|S\rangle$  and  $|R\rangle$  actually represents sums over all basis kets of  $S$  and  $R$  respectively. As an example, we can split the Hubbard model Hamiltonian between a particular site  $i = p$  and the rest of the lattice as follows (fig. 1.2):

$$\begin{aligned} H_{\text{hubb}} = & \underbrace{U^H \hat{n}_{p\uparrow} \hat{n}_{p\downarrow} - \mu^H \sum_{\sigma} \hat{n}_{p\sigma}}_{H_S} + \underbrace{U^H \sum_{i \neq p} \hat{n}_{i\uparrow} \hat{n}_{p\downarrow} - \mu^H \sum_{i \neq p, \sigma} \hat{n}_{i\sigma} - t^H \sum_{\substack{\sigma, \langle i, j \rangle \\ i \neq p \neq j}} (c_{i\sigma}^\dagger c_{j\sigma} + \text{h.c.})}_{H_R} \\ & - \underbrace{t^H \sum_{\substack{\sigma, \\ i \in \text{N.N. of } p}} (c_{i\sigma}^\dagger c_{p\sigma} + \text{h.c.})}_{H_{SR} + H_{RS}} \end{aligned} \quad (1.2.2)$$

The Greens function of the full Hamiltonian can also be split in a similar fashion:

$$G(\omega) = \begin{bmatrix} G_S & G_{SR} \\ G_{RS} & G_R \end{bmatrix} \quad (1.2.3)$$

Each Greens function can be written in terms of the non-interacting counterpart and the self-energy through the Dyson equation:  $\Sigma_i = 1/G_{i,0} - 1/G_i$ .

The subsystem  $S$  is usually taken to be the "cluster", and consequently,  $R$  represents the "bath". The smaller system is typically chosen such that its eigenstates are known exactly. Progress is then made by choosing a simpler version of  $H_R$  and a simpler form also for its coupling  $H_{RS}$  with the smaller system. This combination of the cluster and the simpler bath is then called the *auxiliary system*. A typical auxiliary system for the Hubbard model would be the SIAM, where the impurity represents an arbitrary site  $p$  of the lattice, the bath represents the rest of the lattice sites and the hybridisation term between the impurity and the bath represents the coupling term  $H_{RS}$ . Such a construction is shown in fig. 1.2. *It should be noted that any reasonable choice of the cluster and bath would break the translational symmetry of the full model.* To allow computing quantities, one would need to make the bath (which is a much larger system) simpler than the cluster (which is a single site). This distinction breaks the translational symmetry of the Hubbard model. For eg., if one chooses eq. 1.1.1 as the auxiliary system, then the fact that the impurity has an onsite correlation while the bath does not means we have broken the symmetry between the cluster and the bath.

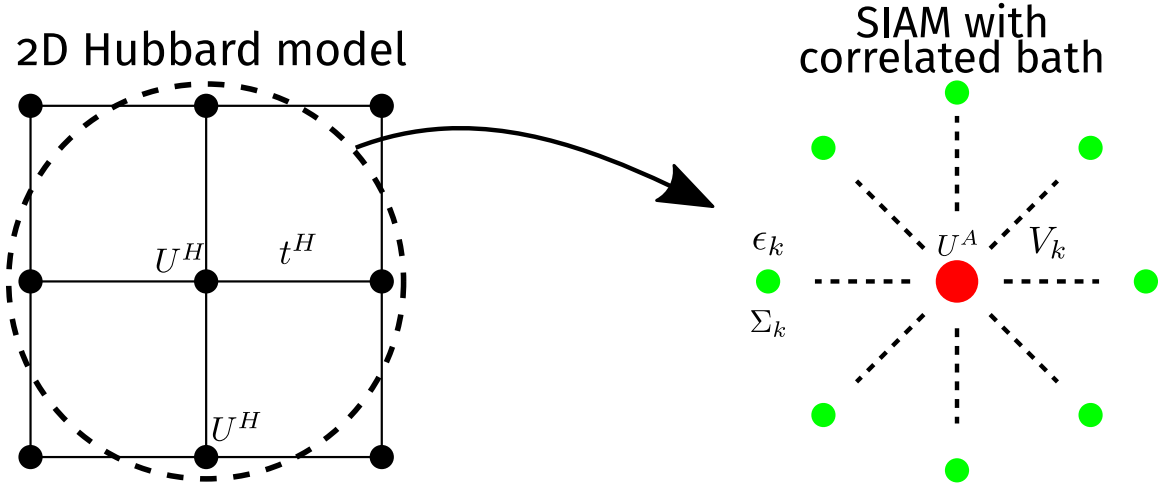


Figure 1.2: *Left*: Full Hubbard model lattice with onsite repulsion  $U^H$  on all sites and hopping between nearest neighbour sites with strength  $t^H$ . *Right*: Extraction of the auxiliary (cluster+bath) system from the full lattice. The central site on left becomes the impurity site (red) on the right (with an onsite repulsion  $\epsilon_d$ ), while the rest of the  $N - 1$  sites on the left form a conduction bath (green circles) (with dispersion  $\epsilon_k$  and correlation modelled by the self-energy  $\Sigma_k(\omega)$ ) that hybridizes with the impurity through the coupling  $V$ .

### Dynamical mean-field theory - an example of an auxiliary model approach

Dynamical mean-field theory is an approximation scheme that use impurity models to obtain Greens functions of bulk systems of strong correlation [4, 5]. The essential idea is to find the most suitable impurity model that replicates the full Hamiltonian. This is done through the following algorithm. Given a bulk Hamiltonian with on-site correlation  $U$  and a non-interacting  $k$ -space Greens function  $G_{k,0}$  for the bath:

1. We first create an impurity model with on-site correlation  $U$  and non-interacting impurity Greens function  $G_{i,0} = \sum_k G_{k,0}$ .

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}} = H_{\text{imp}}(U) - t \sum_{\sigma} \left( c_{d\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{0\sigma} + \text{h.c.} \right) + H_{\text{bath}}(t, G_{i,0})$$

2. This impurity model is solved using some method like numerical renormalisation group, and the self-energy  $\Sigma_{\text{aux}}$  of the impurity is obtained.
3. The impurity self-energy is now *equated* with the bath momentum-space self-energy:

$$\Sigma_k(\omega) = \Sigma_{\text{aux}}(\omega)$$

Since the impurity is purely local, this is an approximation that involves replacing a non-local quantity by its purely local component:  $\Sigma_k(\omega) = \sum_{\vec{r}} e^{i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{r}} \Sigma_{\vec{r}}(\omega) \simeq \Sigma_{\vec{r}=0}(\omega)$ . This approximation is a result of the single-site nature of the cluster of the chosen auxiliary model - larger clusters with more impurities can generate non-local components. This local approximation becomes exact in the limit of large system dimension  $w$ , because it can be shown that the non-local components of the self-energy scale as  $w^{-3/2}$ .

4. With this updated bath self-energy, we now create a new  $k$ -space Greens function for the bath:

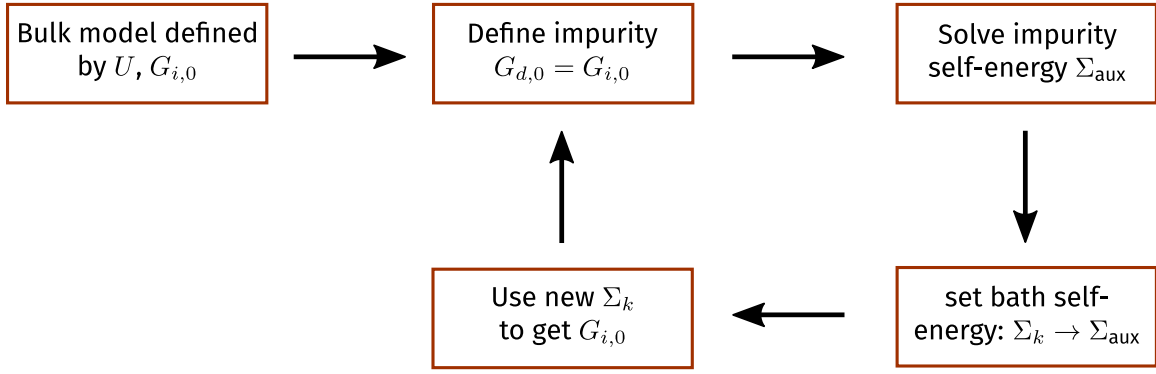
$$G_i(\omega) = \sum_k G_k(\omega) = \sum_k \frac{1}{\omega - H_{\text{bath}}(k) - \Sigma_k(\omega)} = \sum_k \frac{1}{\omega - H_{\text{bath}}(k) - \Sigma_{\text{aux}}(\omega)}$$

This interacting Greens function is then used to obtain the updated non-interacting Greens function, using Dyson's equation:

$$G_{i,0} = \frac{1}{1/G_i + \Sigma_{\text{aux}}}$$

5. Repeat the algorithm from step 1 with the updated  $G_{i,0}$ , until  $\Sigma_{\text{aux}}$  stops changing.

The stopping condition is the consistency relation that makes the bath and impurity self-energies equal.



### 1.3 A "bottoms-up" approach to using auxiliary models

As mentioned in the previous section, the question we are posing is the following: what is the simplest auxiliary model of impurity in a bath that can capture the metal-insulator transition in a Hubbard-like model of correlated electrons. We approach this problem in a constructionist/bottoms-up way: we first identify an appropriate quantum impurity model (fig. 1.2) that shows an impurity phase transition, and then create a bulk model out of this auxiliary model. The bulk model hence created will then show a metal-insulator transition. The impurity models are studied using the recently-developed unitary renormalisation group method [6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11], and this analysis is shown in chapters 2 and 3. The leap to the bulk model is then made by applying lattice translation operators on the auxiliary model. This process is shown in chapter 4. This process, referred to as tiling here, relates the auxiliary model Hamiltonian with that of the bulk, and hence allows connecting the Greens functions and other related quantities across dimensions. One nice outcome is that since the auxiliary model has multiple sites, there is a real-space off-diagonal component of the self-energy, and this leads to a  $k$ -dependence in the self-energy of the bulk, which is in contrast with the lack of  $k$ -dependence in single-site DMFT.

In our approach, the auxiliary models can be chosen in various ways. The simplest choice is of course the single-impurity Anderson model of eq. 1.1.1:

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{SIAM}} = \epsilon_d \hat{n}_d + U \hat{n}_{d\uparrow} \hat{n}_{d\downarrow} - t \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle, \sigma} \left( c_{i\sigma}^\dagger c_{j\sigma} + \text{h.c.} \right) + V \sum_{\sigma} \left( c_{d\sigma}^\dagger c_{0\sigma} + \text{h.c.} \right) \quad (1.3.1)$$

This model does not show any impurity phase transition - the impurity is always screened [12, 13, 14]. Correlation can be introduced into the auxiliary model in two ways:

1. The impurity or the bath can be made to have additional interaction:

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}} = \mathcal{H}_{\text{SIAM}} + J \vec{S}_d \cdot \vec{s}_0 \quad (1.3.2)$$

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}} = \mathcal{H}_{\text{SIAM}} + J \vec{S}_d \cdot \vec{s}_0 - U_b \left( \hat{n}_{0\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{0\downarrow} \right)^2 \quad (1.3.3)$$

The first example has a spin-exchange interaction between the impurity site and the zeroth site, while the second example additionally has a correlation locally on the zeroth site.

2. The second method is to make the cluster itself more complicated. That is, one can introduce multiple impurity sites that are connected via the hopping:

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}} = -\frac{U}{2} \sum_{d_i} \left( \hat{n}_{d_i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{d_i\downarrow} \right)^2 + V \sum_{d_i} \sum_{\sigma} \left( c_{d_i\sigma}^\dagger c_{0\sigma} + \text{h.c.} \right) + \text{K.E.} - t \sum_{\sigma} \left( c_{d_1\sigma}^\dagger c_{d_2\sigma} + \text{h.c.} \right) \quad (1.3.4)$$

The next step in the programme is to tile the real-space lattice with this cluster+bath Hamiltonian  $\tilde{H}$  to restore translational invariance (shown in a later section), and obtain a new bulk Hamiltonian for correlated electrons,  $\tilde{H} = T [\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}}] T^{-1}$ , where  $T$  denotes the operator that performs the set of iterative real-space translations, and enables the cluster-bath (auxiliary model) Hamiltonian to span the target real-space lattice. Given a general auxiliary model Hamiltonian  $\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}}$ , the result of tiling can be written very generally as

$$\tilde{H} = \sum_{\{i_1, i_2, \dots\}} \mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}} \left( \{i_1, i_2, \dots\} \right) \quad (1.3.5)$$

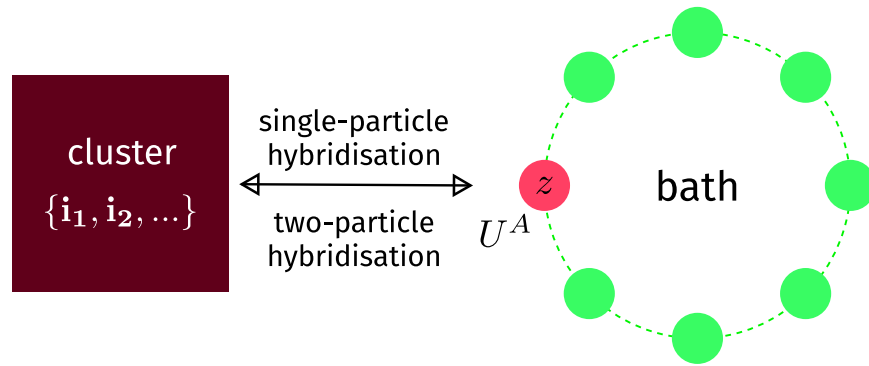


Figure 1.3: Cluster+bath construction of auxiliary model. It consists of a cluster (red square) hybridising with a bath (ring) by hopping into and out of the zeroth site (pink). The other sites (green) form the rest of the bath. Just the cluster and the zeroth site have onsite correlations.

where  $\{i_1, i_2, \dots\}$  represents the indices for the members of the cluster. To reiterate, what that means is that we have placed the cluster+bath system at all lattice point sets  $\{i_1, i_2, \dots\}$  to reconstruct a new model of correlated electrons. The answer to how closely  $\tilde{H}$  approximates a target model of correlated electrons lies in (i) the choice of the cluster-bath construction of the auxiliary model, and (ii) the accuracy of the URG procedure on the auxiliary model.



## Chapter 2

# Physics of the generalised single-impurity Anderson model

### 2.1 Introduction of spin-exchange and charge isospin-exchange interactions into the SIAM: the generalised SIAM

We will now study the generalised SIAM obtained by introducing spin-exchange and charge isospin-exchange interactions between the impurity and the conduction bath. Such terms are generated when one does a Schrieffer-Wolff transformation on the SIAM, but we will find it prudent to keep these terms in the bare model itself.

The spin-exchange interaction has the form

$$J\vec{S}_d \cdot \vec{s} = J \left[ S_d^z s^z + \frac{1}{2} (S_d^+ s^- + S_d^- s^+) \right], \quad (2.1.1)$$

where  $\vec{S}_d = (S_d^x, S_d^y, S_d^z) = \sum_{\alpha\beta} \vec{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta} c_{d\alpha}^\dagger c_{d\beta}$  is the impurity spin operator,  $\vec{s} = \sum_{kk'\alpha\beta} \vec{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta} c_{k\alpha}^\dagger c_{k'\beta}$  is the spin operator for the conduction bath and  $J$  is the spin-exchange coupling. The bath spin operator actually acts locally, as can be seen by Fourier transforming to real space (using the definition  $f(k) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_r g(r) \exp(ikr)$ ):

$$\vec{s} = \sum_{kk'rr'} \frac{1}{N} e^{ikr-ik'r'} \vec{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta} c_{r\alpha}^\dagger c_{r'\beta} = \sum_{rr'} \frac{1}{N} \vec{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta} c_{r\alpha}^\dagger c_{r'\beta} N \delta(r) \delta(r') = \vec{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta} c_{0\alpha}^\dagger c_{0\beta} \quad (2.1.2)$$

In order to introduce the charge isospin coupling, we define the Nambu spinor [15, 16]  $\psi^k = \begin{pmatrix} c_{k\uparrow} & c_{k\downarrow}^\dagger \end{pmatrix}$ , and the charge isospin [17] for the mobile conduction electrons

$$\vec{C} = \sum_{kk'} \psi^{k\dagger} \vec{S} \psi^{k'} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{kk'\alpha\beta} \psi_\alpha^{k\dagger} \vec{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta} \psi_\beta^{k'} \quad (2.1.3)$$

The various components of the isospin are

$$\begin{aligned} C^z &= \sum_{kk'\sigma} \frac{1}{2} \psi_\sigma^{k\dagger} \sigma_{\sigma\sigma}^z \psi_\sigma^{k'} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{kk'\sigma} \left( c_{k\sigma}^\dagger c_{k'\sigma} - \frac{1}{2} \delta_{kk'} \right) \\ C^x &= \sum_{kk'\sigma} \frac{1}{2} \psi_\sigma^{k\dagger} \sigma_{\sigma\bar{\sigma}}^x \psi_{\bar{\sigma}}^{k'} = \sum_{kk'\sigma} \frac{\sigma}{4} \left( c_{k\sigma}^\dagger c_{k'\bar{\sigma}}^\dagger + \text{h.c.} \right) \\ C^y &= \sum_{kk'\sigma} \frac{1}{2} \psi_\sigma^{k\dagger} \sigma_{\sigma\bar{\sigma}}^y \psi_{\bar{\sigma}}^{k'} = \sum_{kk'\sigma} -\frac{i\sigma}{4} \left( c_{k\sigma}^\dagger c_{k'\bar{\sigma}}^\dagger - \text{h.c.} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (2.1.4)$$

It is easy to verify that these operators satisfy the SU(2) commutation algebra. For example, if we write  $C^x = A + A^\dagger$  and  $C^y = B + B^\dagger$ , then  $[C^x, C^y] = [A, B^\dagger] - \text{h.c.}$ , where

$$[A, B^\dagger] = \frac{1}{4} \sum_{kk', qq'} \left[ c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger, i c_{q'\downarrow} c_{q\uparrow} \right] = \frac{i}{4} \sum_{kq} \left( c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{q\uparrow} - c_{k\downarrow} c_{q\downarrow}^\dagger \right) \quad (2.1.5)$$

and therefore

$$\Rightarrow [C^x, C^y] = \frac{i}{2} \sum_{kq} (c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{q\uparrow} - c_{k\downarrow}^\dagger c_{q\downarrow}) = iC^z \quad (2.1.6)$$

There are similar operators for the impurity electron:

$$\psi_d = \begin{pmatrix} c_{d\uparrow} & c_{d\downarrow}^\dagger \end{pmatrix}, \quad \vec{C}_d = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\beta} \psi_{d,\alpha} \vec{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta} \psi_{d,\beta} \quad (2.1.7)$$

The full charge-Kondo interaction can now be written down in terms of these isospins:

$$K \vec{C}_d \cdot \vec{C} = K \left[ C_d^z C^z + \frac{1}{2} (C_d^+ C^- + C_d^- C^+) \right] \quad (2.1.8)$$

where  $C^\pm \equiv C^x \pm iC^y$ .

$$C^+ = \sum_{kk'} c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger, \quad C^- = \sum_{kk'} c_{k'\downarrow} c_{k\uparrow} \quad (2.1.9)$$

The full generalised Anderson model Hamiltonian, at particle-hole symmetry, is

$$\mathcal{H} = \sum_{k\sigma} \epsilon_k \tau_{k\sigma} + \epsilon_d (\hat{n}_{d\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{d\downarrow})^2 + \sum_{k\sigma} (V_k c_{k\sigma}^\dagger c_{d\sigma} + h.c.) + J \vec{S}_d \cdot \vec{s} + K \vec{C}_d \cdot \vec{C} \quad (2.1.10)$$

For the URG analysis, at each RG step, we decouple the electronic states  $q\beta$  on the  $k$ -space shell of radius  $\Lambda_j$ . For simplicity, we will only consider those diagonal terms in the denominator that either have both  $q\beta$  and  $q\bar{\beta}$  or both  $q\beta$  and  $d$  or both  $q\bar{\beta}$  and  $d$ . Terms that have purely  $q\bar{\beta}$  will not be considered. Also, the scattering between just  $d$  and  $q\bar{\beta}$  can be ignored since it is diagonal in  $q\beta$ . The diagonal (number-preserving) part is

$$H_D = \sum_{\beta} \epsilon_q \tau_{q\beta} + \epsilon_d (\hat{n}_{d\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{d\downarrow})^2 + J S_d^z s_q^z + K C_d^z C_q^z \quad (2.1.11)$$

where  $s_q^z = \frac{1}{2} (\hat{n}_{q\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{q\downarrow})$  and  $C_q^z = \frac{1}{2} (\hat{n}_{q\uparrow} + \hat{n}_{q\downarrow} - 1)$ . The off-diagonal part is:

$$H_X = \sum_{\beta=\uparrow,\downarrow} \left[ V c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{q\beta} + \frac{1}{2} J \sum_{k<\Lambda_N} \left\{ (\hat{n}_{d\beta} - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}) \frac{1}{2} c_{k\beta}^\dagger c_{q\beta} + c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{d\bar{\beta}} c_{k\bar{\beta}}^\dagger c_{q\beta} \right\} + \frac{1}{2} K \sum_{k<\Lambda_N} \left\{ (\hat{n}_d - 1) \frac{1}{2} c_{k\beta}^\dagger c_{q\beta} + c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{d\bar{\beta}}^\dagger c_{k\bar{\beta}} c_{q\beta} \right\} \right] + h.c. \quad (2.1.12)$$

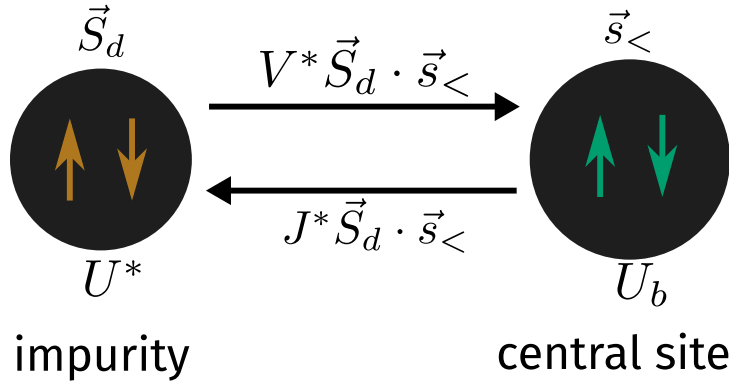


Figure 2.1: While we have studied the full model under renormalisation group, often we will turn to a simplified zero-bandwidth version of the model that is obtained by ignoring the kinetic energy part of the Hamiltonian. This zero-bandwidth model is effectively a two site model.

## 2.2 RG equations for generalised SIAM

$$\begin{aligned}
\Delta\epsilon_d &= 2V^2 n_j \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d + \frac{K}{4}} - \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \epsilon_d + \frac{J}{4}} \right) + \frac{n_j}{2} \left( \frac{J^2}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} - \frac{K^2}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} \right), \\
\Delta V &= -\frac{3n_j V}{8} \left[ J \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \epsilon_d + \frac{J}{4}} \right) + K \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d + \frac{K}{4}} \right) \right], \\
\Delta J &= -\frac{n_j J^2}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}}, \\
\Delta K &= -\frac{n_j K^2}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4}}
\end{aligned} \tag{2.2.1}$$

In terms of  $U = -2\epsilon_d$ , the equations become

$$\Delta U = 4V^2 n_j \left( \frac{1}{d_1} - \frac{1}{d_0} \right) - n_j \left( \frac{J^2}{d_2} - \frac{K^2}{d_3} \right), \tag{2.2.2}$$

$$\Delta V = -\frac{3n_j V}{8} \left[ J \left( \frac{1}{d_2} + \frac{1}{d_1} \right) + K \left( \frac{1}{d_3} + \frac{1}{d_0} \right) \right], \tag{2.2.3}$$

$$\Delta J = -\frac{n_j J^2}{d_2}, \quad \Delta K = -\frac{n_j K^2}{d_3} \tag{2.2.4}$$

$d_i$  are the denominators:

$$d_0 = \omega - \frac{D}{2} - \frac{U}{2} + \frac{K}{4}, \quad d_1 = \omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U}{2} + \frac{J}{4}, \quad d_2 = \omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}, \quad d_3 = \omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4} \tag{2.2.5}$$

## 2.3 Nature of coupling RG flows

### 2.3.1 Repulsive interaction on impurity: $U > 0$

For the Hamiltonians with positive on-site correlation, we will assume that the spin-exchange coupling is positive and charge isospin-exchange coupling is negative:  $J > 0, K < 0$ . This choice is motivated by the signs of the corresponding terms when they are generated via a Schrieffer-Wolff transformation [18]. The impurity-bath hybridisation  $V$  is always positive. The sign of the couplings lead to inequalities among the denominators which we will utilise at various points. First of all, since  $U > 0$ , we have  $d_1 - d_2 = \frac{U}{2} > 0$ . Secondly, since  $K < 0$ , we have  $d_2 - d_3 = \frac{J-K}{4} > 0$ . And finally, we have  $d_3 - d_0 = \frac{U}{2} > 0$ . Combining these, we can write

$$d_1 > d_2 > d_3 > d_0 \tag{2.3.1}$$

The strong coupling regime is defined as the range of values of  $\omega$  where the hybridisation is relevant. This is ensured by the assumption  $d_1 < 0$ . From eq. 2.3.1, we can then conclude that all denominators are negative:  $d_i = -|d_i|$ . The simplest consequence of this is the RG flow of  $K$ :

$$\Delta K = -\frac{n_j K^2}{d_3} = \frac{n_j K^2}{|d_3|} > 0 \implies K_{j+1} > K_j \implies K_0 = -|K_0|, K^* \rightarrow 0 \tag{2.3.2}$$

$K_j$  is the value of  $K$  after the  $j^{\text{th}}$  RG step,  $K_0$  representing the bare value. In other words, since  $d_3 < 0$ , the RG equation for  $K$  provides an algebraic increment, and the negative  $K$  increases and flows towards zero. The  $*$  indicates a fixed point value. The isospin coupling is irrelevant in this regime, and we will ignore it.

The coupling  $J$ , on the other hand, is relevant and flows from a small positive value towards a large value at strong coupling.

$$\Delta J = -\frac{n_j J^2}{d_2} = \frac{n_j J^2}{|d_2|} > 0 \implies J_{j+1} > J_j \implies J_0 \rightarrow \text{large } J^* \text{ (strong coupling)} \tag{2.3.3}$$

The value of  $J^*$  is obtained when the denominator  $d_2$  vanishes.

Because of the RG irrelevance of  $K$ , we can simplify the RG equation for  $V$ :

$$\Delta V = -\frac{3n_j V J}{8} \left( \frac{1}{d_2} + \frac{1}{d_1} \right) = \frac{3n_j V J}{8} \left( \frac{1}{|d_2|} + \frac{1}{|d_1|} \right) > 0 \quad (2.3.4)$$

Since both the denominators are positive,  $V$  is relevant. The fixed point value  $V^*$  is attained when the denominator  $d_1$  vanishes ( $d_1$  will vanish earlier than  $d_2$ ).

We can compare the rate of flows of  $V$  and  $J$ :

$$\frac{\Delta V}{\Delta J} = \frac{3V}{8J} \left( 1 + \frac{|d_2|}{|d_1|} \right) > \frac{3V}{4J} \quad (2.3.5)$$

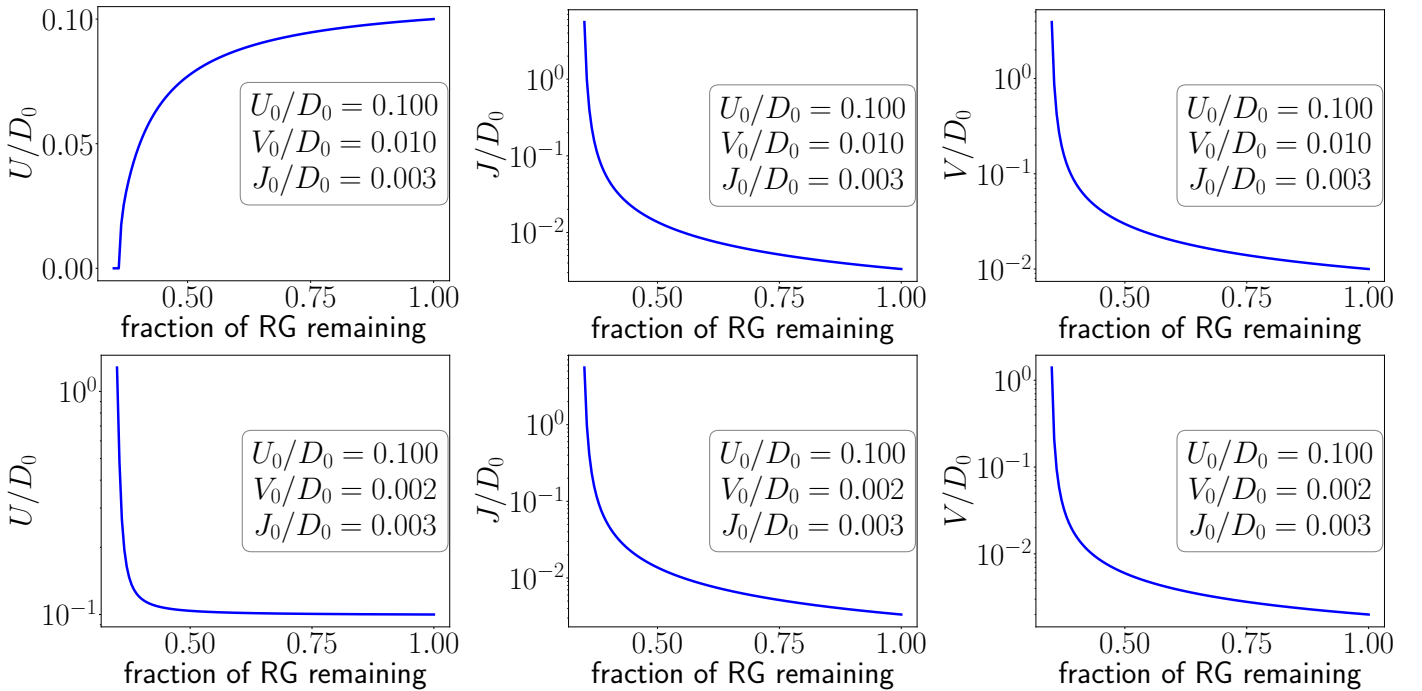
There we used the fact that  $|d_2| > |d_1|$ . We finally come to the RG equation for  $U$ :

$$\Delta U = 4V^2 n_j \left( \frac{1}{d_1} - \frac{1}{d_0} \right) - n_j \frac{J^2}{d_2} = -4V^2 \left( U + \frac{J}{4} \right) \frac{n_j}{d_0 d_1} - \frac{n_j J^2}{d_2} \quad (2.3.6)$$

For  $V > J$ , we can expect  $U$  to be irrelevant. On the other hand,  $V < J$  makes  $U$  relevant.

In short, the  $U > 0$  regime is characterised by an irrelevant isospin-exchange coupling  $K$  and a relevant spin-exchange coupling  $J$ , and the following set of RG equations for the remaining couplings  $U$  and  $V$ :

$$\Delta U = 4V^2 n_j \left( \frac{1}{d_1} - \frac{1}{d_0} \right) - n_j \frac{J^2}{d_2}, \quad \Delta V = -\frac{3n_j V J}{8} \left( \frac{1}{d_2} + \frac{1}{d_1} \right) \quad (2.3.7)$$



### 2.3.2 Attractive interaction on impurity: $U < 0$

Here, we have  $J < 0$  and  $K > 0$ . The denominators satisfy the following inequality in this regime:

$$d_0 > d_3 > d_2 > d_1 \quad (2.3.8)$$

The strong coupling regime here corresponds to  $d_0 < 0$ . This again means that all the denominators are negative. The spin-exchange coupling  $J$  is now irrelevant, because its bare value is negative while its RG equation is positive:  $\Delta J > 0$ .

Moreover, the isospin coupling  $K$  is now positive and so is its RG equation:  $\Delta K > 0$ , which means it flows to strong coupling.  $V$  also flows to strong coupling. The RG equation for  $U$  can be written as

$$\Delta U = 4V^2 \left( \frac{K}{4} - U \right) \frac{n_j}{d_0 d_1} + \frac{n_j K^2}{d_3} \quad (2.3.9)$$

The first term is necessarily positive, while the second term is negative. This means that for roughly  $V_0 > J_0$ , we will have  $\Delta U > 0$ , and since  $U_0 < 0$ , this amounts to an irrelevant flow of  $U$  towards zero. On the other hand, for  $J_0 > V_0$ , we will have  $\Delta U < 0$ , and this corresponds to a relevant flow of  $U$  towards large negative value.

In other words, the RG flows in this regime can be exactly mapped to those in the positive  $U$  regime. The general statement is: in the strong coupling regime of positive(negative)  $U$ ,  $V$  is always relevant,  $J(K)$  is relevant,  $K(J)$  is irrelevant, and  $U$  is relevant when  $J(K) > V$ , otherwise  $U$  is irrelevant.

## 2.4 Effective Hamiltonian and ground state

The fixed point Hamiltonian can, in general, be written as

$$\mathcal{H}^* = \sum_{\sigma, k} \epsilon_k T_{k\sigma} - \frac{U^*}{2} (\hat{n}_{d\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{d\downarrow})^2 + \sum_{\sigma, k < \Lambda^*} (V^* c_{k\sigma}^\dagger c_{d\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + J^* \vec{S}_d \cdot \vec{s} + K^* \vec{C}_d \cdot \vec{C} \quad (2.4.1)$$

The first term is the kinetic energy of all the electrons. The next two terms are the impurity-diagonal pieces, featuring the renormalised interaction  $U^*$ . The next three terms are the residual interactions between the impurity and the metal, with the renormalised couplings  $V^*$ ,  $J^*$  and  $K^*$ . The summations in these terms extend from the fixed point momentum cutoff  $\Lambda^*$  to 0. This is the region of momentum space which the URG was unable to decouple. The operators  $\vec{s}$  and  $\vec{C}$  represent the macroscopic magnetic and charge spins formed by the remaining electrons that are lying inside the window  $[0, \Lambda^*]$ :

$$\vec{s} = \sum_{\substack{k, k' < \Lambda^* \\ \alpha, \beta}} c_{k\alpha}^\dagger \vec{\sigma}_{\alpha\beta} c_{k'\beta} \quad (2.4.2)$$

Our goal here is to write down the ground state wavefunction for this low-energy Hamiltonian.

To make progress, we will simplify the effective Hamiltonian by taking the zero bandwidth limit. This reduces it to a two-site problem. One site is of course the impurity site, and this site will be labeled as site 1. The other site will be formed by the center of mass degree of freedom of the conduction electrons, and will be labeled as site 2. The Hamiltonian for this two-site problem is

$$\mathcal{H}_{IR} = -\frac{U^*}{2} (\hat{n}_{1\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{1\downarrow})^2 + V^* \sum_{\sigma} (c_{1\sigma}^\dagger c_{2\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + J^* \vec{S}_1 \cdot \vec{S}_2 + K^* \vec{C}_1 \cdot \vec{C}_2 \quad (2.4.3)$$

The subscripts on the operators designate the site on which they act;  $\hat{n}_1$  is the number operator for the first site.

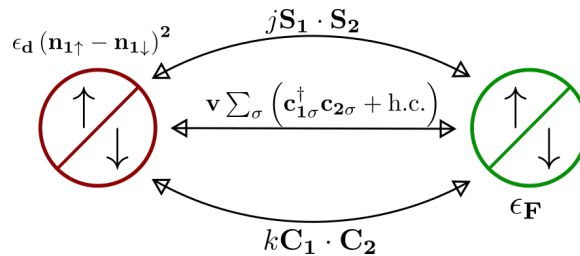


Figure 2.2: Two-site effective problem of fixed point Hamiltonian

We will adopt the following notation to represent the states in this Hilbert space. A general state will be represented in the Fock space basis as  $|n_{1\uparrow} n_{1\downarrow} n_{2\uparrow} n_{2\downarrow}\rangle$ . For example,

$$|1101\rangle = c_{1\uparrow}^\dagger c_{1\downarrow}^\dagger c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger |-\rangle \quad (2.4.4)$$

$|- \rangle$  is the vacuum state.

For  $U > 0$ , the ground state is given by

$$|\Psi\rangle_1 = c_s \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle - |\downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) + c_c \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow\downarrow, 0\rangle + |0, \uparrow\downarrow\rangle), \quad E_1 = -V^* \sqrt{\gamma^2 + 4} - \frac{1}{4}U^* - \frac{3}{8}J^* \quad (2.4.5)$$

where  $\gamma = \frac{1}{2V^*} \left[ \frac{1}{4} (3J^* + K^*) + \frac{1}{2}U^* \right]$ . The probabilities for the spin and charge sectors for the ground state are

$$(c_s)^2 = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\gamma^2 + 4}} (\sqrt{\gamma^2 + 4} + \gamma), \quad (c_c)^2 = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\gamma^2 + 4}} (\sqrt{\gamma^2 + 4} - \gamma). \quad (2.4.6)$$

For (roughly)  $J_0 > V_0$ , we get  $J^* \gg V^*$  and  $U^* \gg U_0$  so that  $\gamma \gg 1$ . This gives  $(c_s)^2 \sim 1$  and  $(c_c)^2 \sim 0$ . The entire contribution to the ground state then comes from the spin sectors of the two sites. This is calculated numerically in fig. 2.3.

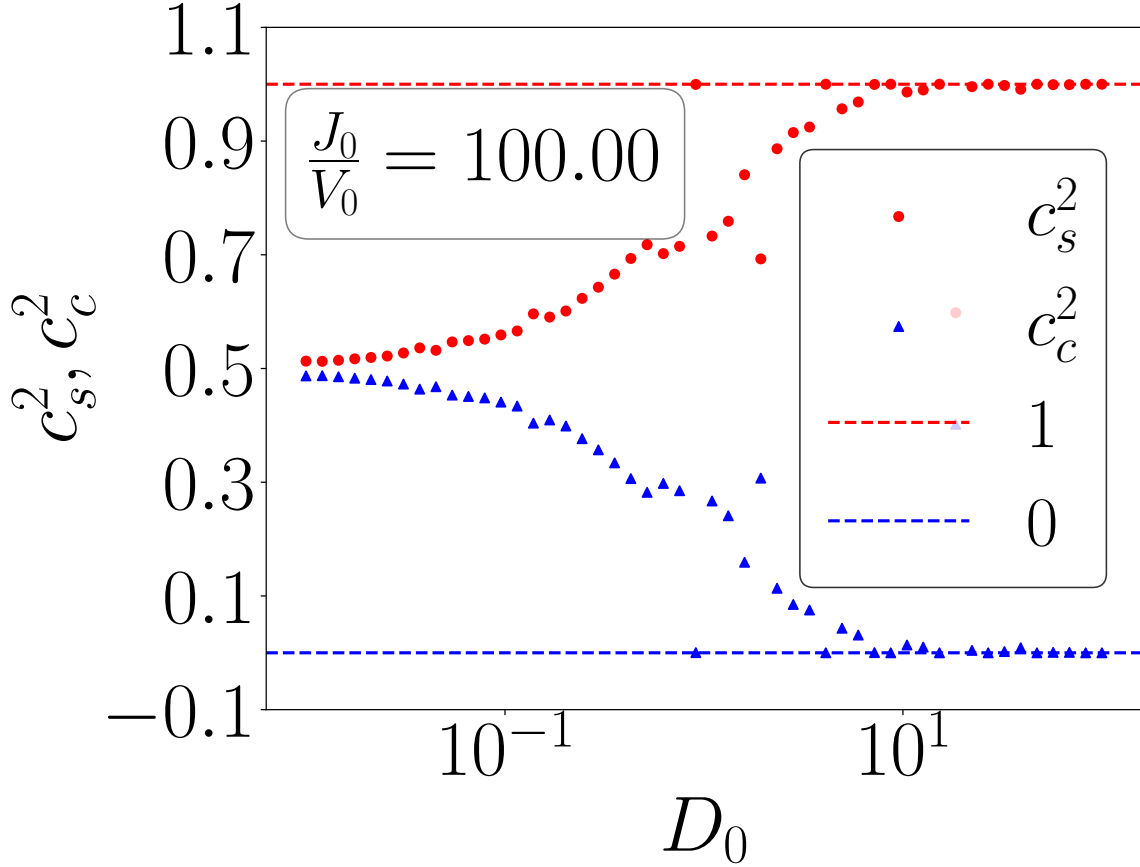


Figure 2.3: Variation of relative weights  $c_s$  and  $c_c$  with  $J_0$

In the other regime of  $U < 0$ , the two competing states are  $|\Psi\rangle_1$  defined above (with energy  $E_1$ ), and  $|\Psi_2\rangle$ , the charge singlet:  $|\Psi\rangle_2 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|2, 0\rangle - |0, 2\rangle)$  having energy  $E_2$ .

$$E_2 = -\frac{3}{4}K^*, \quad E_1 - E_2 = -\frac{1}{4}\sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{2}K^* + U^*\right)^2 + (4V^*)^2} - \frac{1}{4}U^* + \frac{3}{4}K^* \quad (2.4.7)$$

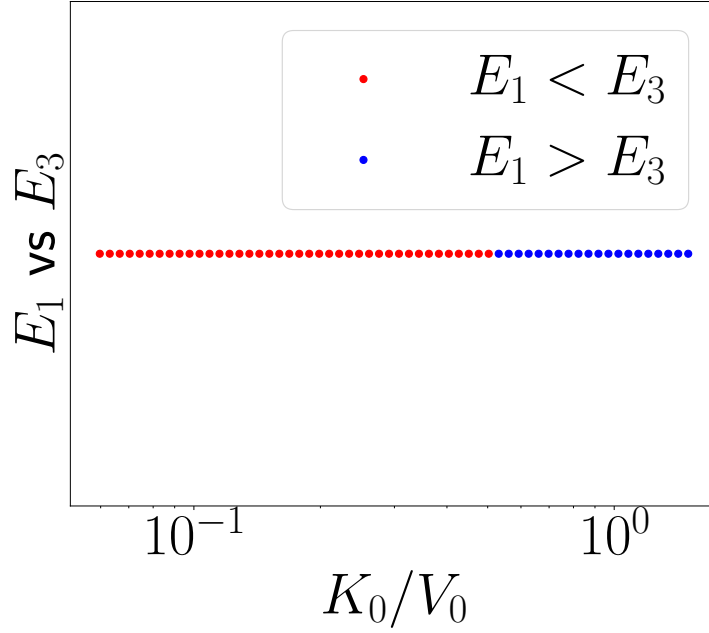
For  $V_0 \gg K_0$ , the largest energy scale will be  $V^*$ , and we can then approximate this difference as

$$E_1 - E_2 \simeq -V^* < 0 \quad (2.4.8)$$

In such a case,  $|\Psi\rangle_1$  will therefore be the ground state. In the other regime  $V_0 \ll K_0$ , the largest energy scale will be  $K^*$ , and we can then write

$$E_1 - E_2 \simeq -\frac{1}{8}K^* + \frac{3}{4}K^* > 0 \quad (2.4.9)$$

In this case, the ground state will be  $|\Psi\rangle_2$ . There exists, therefore, a phase transition at a critical plane  $(U_c, K_c, V_c)$ , where the ground state changes between the charge singlet  $|\Psi\rangle_2$  and the spin singlet + charge triplet  $|\Psi\rangle_1$ .



## 2.5 Approach towards the thermodynamic limit

### [Update with V vs D plots]

The URG method works strictly on finite systems and leads to finite values of fixed point couplings. The behaviour of the Hamiltonian in the thermodynamic limit can then be determined using finite-size scaling where we increase the bandwidth and decrease the width of each RG step. When applied to the fixed point value of the impurity-bath hybridisation parameter  $V$  (fig. 2.4), it can be seen that the fixed point value increases as the system size is increased, implying that the continuum limit of  $V^*$  is  $\infty$ . This holds for both  $V_0 > J_0$  and  $V_0 < J_0$ , as shown in the two panels of fig. 2.4.

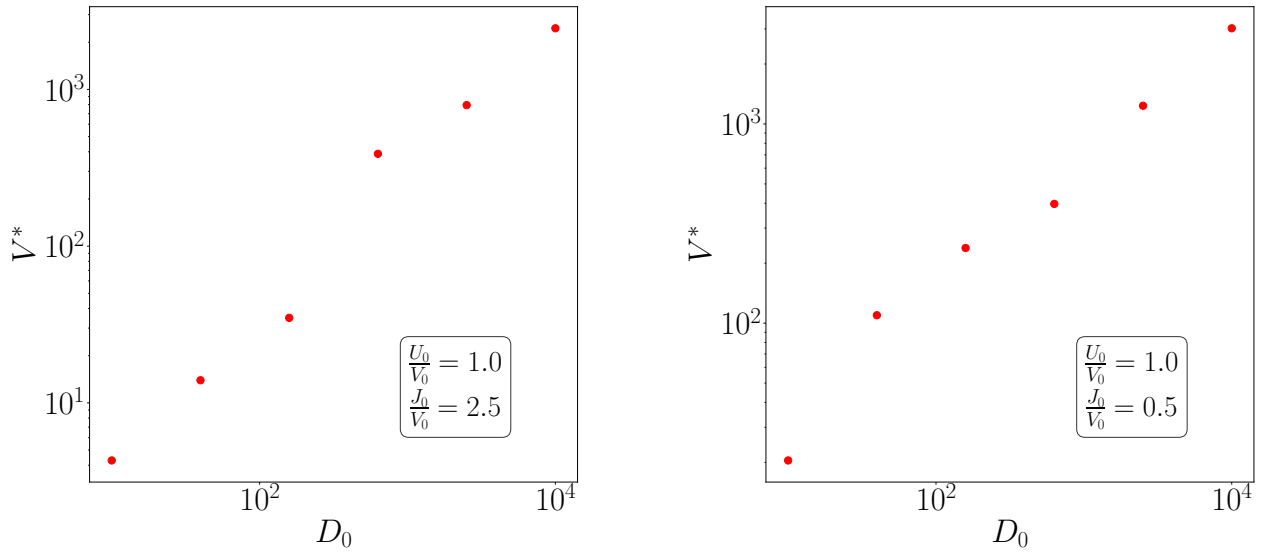


Figure 2.4: Variation of fixed point value  $V^*$  with increasing bandwidth  $D_0$ , for both  $V_0 > J_0$  and  $V_0 < J_0$ .

In a similar manner, we checked the variation of the spin and charge probabilities,  $c_s$  and  $c_c$ , in the ground state, with increasing bandwidth. The result is shown in fig. 2.5. For both  $V_0 < J_0$  and  $V_0 > J_0$ , we see that the spin contribution

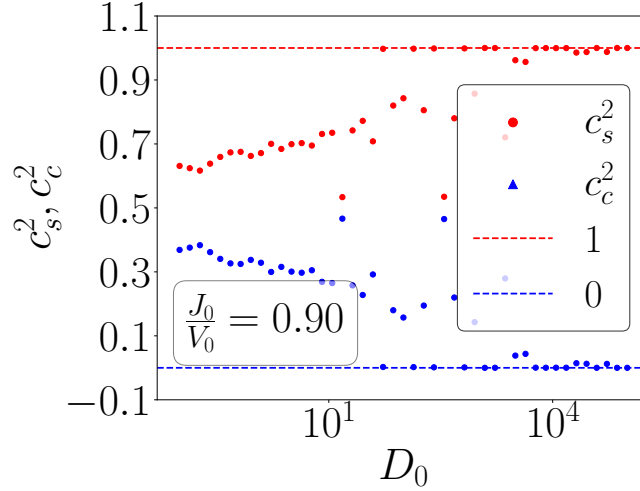


Figure 2.5: Variation of spin and charge fractions,  $c_s$  and  $c_c$ , of the ground state, as a function of bare bandwidth  $D_0$ . Left and right panels show the cases of  $J_0 < V_0$  and  $J_0 > V_0$  respectively.

increases towards unity while the charge contribution vanishes. This indicates that at large bandwidth, the ground state becomes purely a spin singlet, formed purely by singly-occupied impurity states.

$$\lim_{D_0 \rightarrow \infty} |\Psi\rangle_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle - |\downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) \quad (2.5.1)$$

## 2.6 Effective temperature scale at the fixed point

We will first change the discrete RG equation to a continuum equation by interpreting  $\Delta J$  as  $\frac{\Delta J}{\Delta \ln D}$ , where the denominator is unity:  $\Delta \ln D = 1$ . Now, since the bandwidth is decreasing under the RG, we can write  $\Delta \ln D = -d \ln D$ . The continuum equation (for  $K = 0$ ) becomes

$$\frac{dJ}{d \ln D} = n(0)J^2 \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} \quad (2.6.1)$$

where we have replaced by the number of states at each shell with that at the Fermi surface (uniform DOS). We can define a dimensionless quantity  $g \equiv \frac{J}{D} - \omega$ . In terms of  $g$ , the continuum RG equation becomes

$$-\frac{dg}{d \ln D} + \frac{Dg}{2\omega - D} = \frac{n(0)g^2}{1 - \frac{g}{4}} \quad (2.6.2)$$

Now, for the specific case where  $D$  is small ( $D \rightarrow 0$ ), we can simplify and integrate this equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dg}{d \ln D} &= \frac{n(0)g^2}{\frac{g}{4} - 1} \\ \Rightarrow \left[ \frac{1}{g} + \frac{1}{4} \ln g \right]_{g_0}^{g^*} &= n(0) \ln D \Big|_{D_0}^{D^*} \end{aligned} \quad (2.6.3)$$

$g^*(0), D^*(0)$  are the fixed point (bare) values of  $g, D$ . From the denominator structure, the fixed-point value is  $g^* = 4$ . This gives an estimate of the bandwidth of the emergent window:

$$D^* = D_0 \left( \frac{4}{g_0} \right)^{\frac{1}{4n(0)}} \exp \left\{ -\frac{1}{n(0)} \left( \frac{1}{g_0} - \frac{1}{4} \right) \right\} \quad (2.6.4)$$



We can now define a temperature scale for the fixed-point theory:

$$T_K \equiv \frac{2N^*}{\pi} D^* = \frac{2N^*}{\pi} D_0 \left( \frac{4}{g_0} \right)^{\frac{1}{4n(0)}} \exp \left\{ -\frac{1}{n(0)} \left( \frac{1}{g_0} - \frac{1}{4} \right) \right\} \quad (2.6.5)$$

The factor of  $2N^*$  is inserted to make the Kondo temperature intensive (we will see below that the  $N^*$  allows it to be written in terms of parameters of the two-site Hamiltonian) -  $2N^*$  is the total number of momentum states in the fixed point theory. The factor of  $\frac{1}{\pi}$  is for aesthetic reasons. Since we have and will primarily work with  $\omega = 0$ , the fixed point condition can be used to write  $D^* = \frac{J^* + K^*}{2}$ .

$$T_K = \frac{2N^*}{\pi} \frac{1}{2} (J^* + K^*) = \frac{1}{\pi} (j + k) \quad (2.6.6)$$

## 2.7 Impurity susceptibilities

### 2.7.1 Spin susceptibility

The spin susceptibility is defined as

$$\chi(\beta) = \beta \left( \left\langle (S_d^z)^2 \right\rangle - \left\langle S_d^z \right\rangle^2 \right) \quad (2.7.1)$$

There is an alternate way of calculating this. We insert a fictitious magnetic field that couples only to the impurity site. The Hamiltonian in the presence of this field is

$$\mathcal{H}'(B) = \mathcal{H} + BS_d^z \quad (2.7.2)$$

The susceptibility is then given by

$$\chi(\beta) = \lim_{B \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{\beta} \left[ \frac{1}{Z(B)} \frac{\partial^2 Z(B)}{\partial B^2} - \frac{1}{Z(B)^2} \left( \frac{\partial Z(B)}{\partial B} \right)^2 \right] \quad (2.7.3)$$

where  $Z(B)$  is the partition function of the Hamiltonian  $\mathcal{H}'(B)$ . The following is to prove that the RHS of eqs. 2.7.1 and 2.7.3 are the same. We start with 2.7.3. The first derivative can be written as

$$\frac{\partial Z(B)}{\partial B} = \text{Trace} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial B} \exp \left\{ -\beta (\mathcal{H} + BS_d^z) \right\} \right] = \text{Trace} \left[ -\beta S_d^z \exp \left\{ -\beta (\mathcal{H} + BS_d^z) \right\} \right] \quad (2.7.4)$$

which means the first term becomes

$$\lim_{B \rightarrow 0} -\frac{1}{Z(B)^2} \left( \frac{\partial Z(B)}{\partial B} \right)^2 = - \left( \beta \frac{1}{\text{Trace} [\exp \{-\beta \mathcal{H}\}]} \text{Trace} [S_d^z \exp \{-\beta \mathcal{H}\}] \right)^2 = -\beta^2 \langle S_d^z \rangle^2 \quad (2.7.5)$$

The second derivative is

$$\frac{\partial^2 Z(B)}{\partial B^2} = \text{Trace} \left[ -\beta S_d^z \frac{\partial}{\partial B} \exp \left\{ -\beta (\mathcal{H} + BS_d^z) \right\} \right] = \text{Trace} \left[ \beta^2 (S_d^z)^2 \exp \left\{ -\beta (\mathcal{H} + BS_d^z) \right\} \right] \quad (2.7.6)$$

so the second term becomes

$$\lim_{B \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{Z(B)} \frac{\partial^2 Z(B)}{\partial B^2} = \beta^2 \frac{1}{\text{Trace} [\exp \{-\beta \mathcal{H}\}]} \text{Trace} \left[ (S_d^z)^2 \exp \{-\beta \mathcal{H}\} \right] = \beta^2 \left\langle (S_d^z)^2 \right\rangle \quad (2.7.7)$$

The full thing becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{B \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{\beta} \left[ \frac{1}{Z(B)} \frac{\partial^2 Z(B)}{\partial B^2} - \frac{1}{Z(B)^2} \left( \frac{\partial Z(B)}{\partial B} \right)^2 \right] &= \frac{1}{\beta} \left( -\beta^2 \langle S_d^z \rangle^2 + \beta^2 \left\langle (S_d^z)^2 \right\rangle \right) \\ &= \beta \left( \left\langle (S_d^z)^2 \right\rangle - \langle S_d^z \rangle^2 \right) \end{aligned} \quad (2.7.8)$$

This completes the proof.

To calculate the impurity susceptibility, we take the zero bandwidth Hamiltonian  $\mathcal{H}_{IR}$  and insert a magnetic field to obtain the Hamiltonian in eq. (2.7.2). For a particular regime of  $U$ , only one of  $J$  or  $K$  will be non-zero. We then numerically diagonalise this Hamiltonian to obtain the partition function  $Z(B)$  and its derivatives. The spin susceptibility can then be calculated using eq. (2.7.3). The results for  $U > 0$  are shown in fig. 2.6.

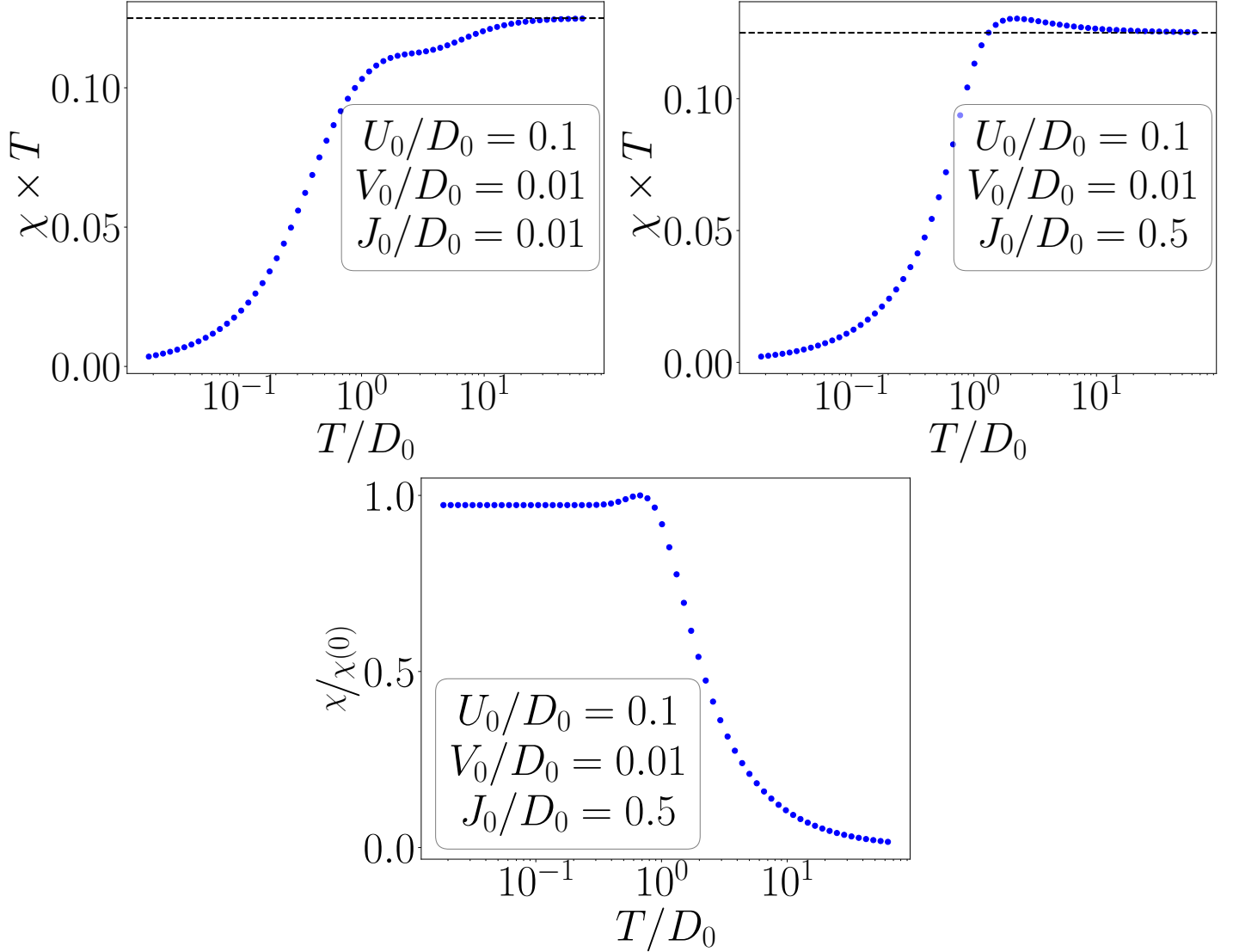


Figure 2.6: Spin susceptibility of the impurity times temperature, for two sets of bare parameters, in  $U > 0$ . At low temperatures, it becomes linear because  $\chi$  itself becomes constant (screening), while at high temperatures,  $\chi \times T$  becomes constant because of the paramagnetic  $\sim 1/T$  form of  $\chi$ . For the right panel with a larger value of the spin-exchange coupling, the  $\chi$  tries to go towards the local moment value of  $1/4$  but eventually drops back to the free orbital value of  $1/8$ .

## 2.7.2 Charge susceptibility

We can similarly define the charge susceptibility as

$$\chi(\beta) = \beta \left( \left\langle (C_d^z)^2 \right\rangle - \langle C_d^z \rangle^2 \right) = \lim_{B_c \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{\beta} \left[ \frac{1}{Z(B_c)} \frac{\partial^2 Z(B_c)}{\partial B_c^2} - \frac{1}{Z(B_c)^2} \left( \frac{\partial Z(B_c)}{\partial B_c} \right)^2 \right] \quad (2.7.9)$$

where  $B_c$  is now a field that couples to the impurity charge-isospin:

$$\mathcal{H}'(B_c) = \mathcal{H} + B_c C_d^z \quad (2.7.10)$$

The charge susceptibility for  $U < 0$  is shown in fig. 2.7.

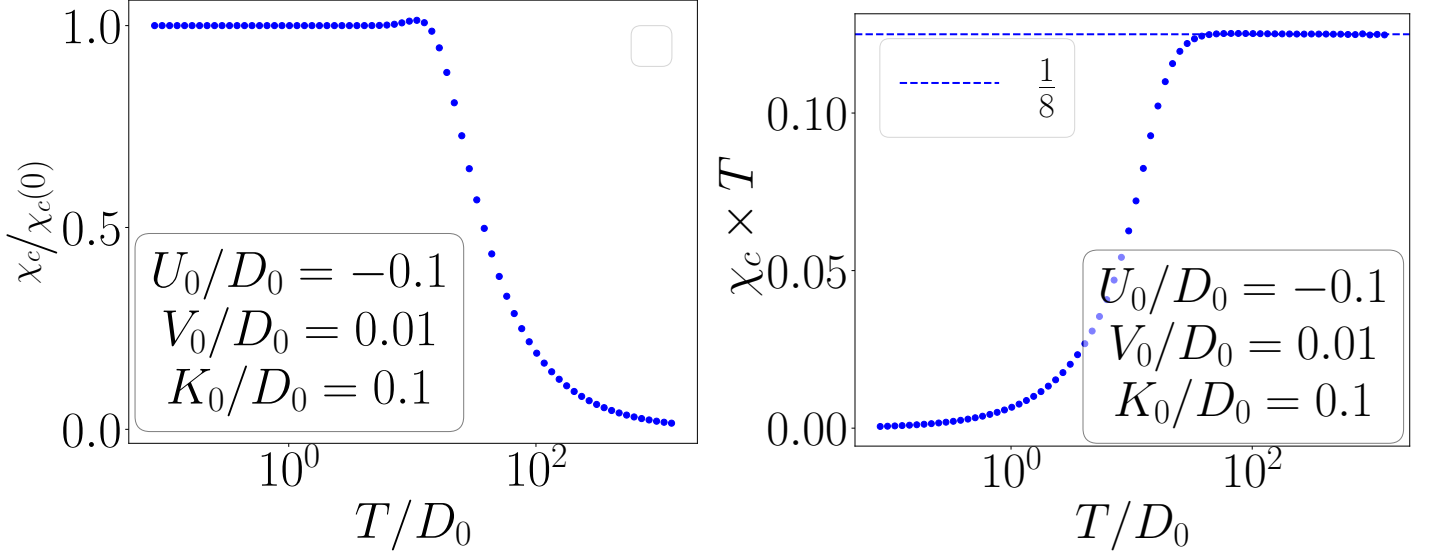


Figure 2.7: Charge susceptibility for the impurity at  $U < 0$ , for two sets of bare parameters. The physics is very similar to that of the spin susceptibility in  $U > 0$ .

It is interesting to look at the behaviour of the charge susceptibility in the positive  $U$  regime, fig. 2.8. It is seen that for  $J_0 < V_0$ , the charge susceptibility is very similar to the spin susceptibility, with a reduced saturation value. This is because, for that range of bare values, the ground state consists of a comparable mixture of the spin and charge states (see fig. 2.3). This means that the magnetic field term in eq. (2.7.10) can couple to the charge component of the ground state, and give a non-zero charge susceptibility at zero temperature. On the other hand, for  $J_0 > V_0$ , we see that  $\chi_c$  vanishes at low temperatures. This can again be understood from the ground state. For that range of bare values, the ground state can be approximated by purely the singlet, because the charge fraction  $c_-^c$  becomes very small. This means that the field  $B_c$  has nothing to couple with. Alternatively, it can be said that since the ground state has only terms with  $\hat{n}_d = 1$ , no number fluctuation is possible, and the impurity isospin is not susceptible at all to charge polarisation.

From eq. (2.5.1), we know that in the thermodynamic limit, the ground state of  $U > 0$  regime reduces to a screened local moment. That then implies that the charge susceptibility vanishes at low temperatures, owing to lack of any charge content in the ground state in the large bandwidth limit.

$$\lim_{D_0 \rightarrow \infty} \chi_c(U > 0, T \rightarrow 0) = 0 \quad (2.7.11)$$

## 2.8 Specific heat

The specific heat is calculated by diagonalizing the fixed point Hamiltonian, numerically. The obtained spectrum is denoted by  $\{\mathcal{E}_i\}$ . The total average energy of the impurity+cloud at temperature  $T$  is then

$$\langle \mathcal{E} \rangle = \frac{1}{Z} \sum_i \mathcal{E}_i e^{-\beta \mathcal{E}_i} \quad (2.8.1)$$

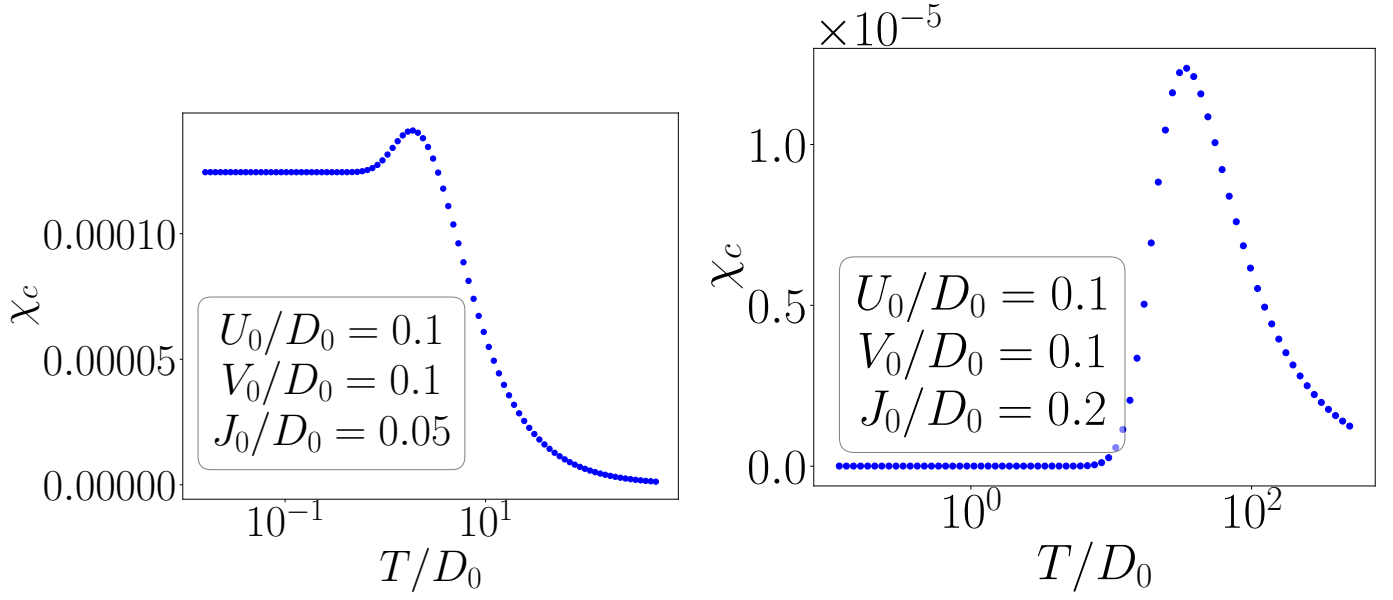


Figure 2.8: Charge susceptibility of the impurity in the positive  $U$  regime, for two values of  $J_0$ . The smaller bare value leads to a spin+charge mixed ground state, and hence a non-zero  $\chi_c$  at zero temperature. The larger  $J_0$ , however, leads to a purely spin ground state without any number fluctuation, and this gives vanishing  $\chi_c$  at zero temperature.

where  $Z = \sum_i e^{-\beta E_i}$  is the partition function. The specific heat of this system is thus

$$\begin{aligned}
 C_V &= \frac{\partial \langle \mathcal{E} \rangle}{\partial T} \\
 &= -\frac{1}{k_B T^2} \frac{\partial \langle \mathcal{E} \rangle}{\partial \beta} \\
 &= \frac{1}{k_B T^2} \left[ \frac{1}{Z} \sum_i \mathcal{E}_i^2 e^{-\beta \mathcal{E}_i} - \left( \frac{1}{Z} \sum_i \mathcal{E}_i e^{-\beta \mathcal{E}_i} \right)^2 \right]
 \end{aligned} \tag{2.8.2}$$

In the absence of impurity, the eigenvalues of the Hamiltonian are  $\{\mathcal{E}_i^0\}$  with a partition function  $Z^0 = \sum_i e^{-\beta E_i^0}$ , so the bath specific heat is

$$C_V^0 = \frac{1}{k_B T^2} \left[ \frac{1}{Z_0} \sum_i \mathcal{E}_i^2 e^{-\beta \mathcal{E}_i^0} - \left( \frac{1}{Z_0} \sum_i \mathcal{E}_i^0 e^{-\beta \mathcal{E}_i^0} \right)^2 \right] \tag{2.8.3}$$

The impurity specific heat is the difference.

$$C_V^{\text{imp}} = C_V - C_V^0 \tag{2.8.4}$$

These values were calculated numerically and plotted against temperature in fig. 2.9.

## 2.9 Renormalization of impurity spectral function

In this section we will obtain the impurity spectral function, which is defined in terms of the impurity Green's function as

$$\mathcal{A}(\omega) = -\frac{1}{\pi} \text{Im} [G_{dd}^{\sigma}(\omega)] \tag{2.9.1}$$

The zero temperature retarded Green's function for the impurity, in the frequency domain, can be written as (see Appendix. D)

$$\mathcal{A}(\omega) = \frac{1}{d_0} \sum_{n,0} \left[ ||\langle 0 | \mathcal{O}_{\sigma} | n \rangle||^2 \delta(\omega + E_0 - E_n) + ||\langle n | \mathcal{O}_{\sigma} | 0 \rangle||^2 \delta(\omega - E_0 + E_n) \right] \tag{2.9.2}$$

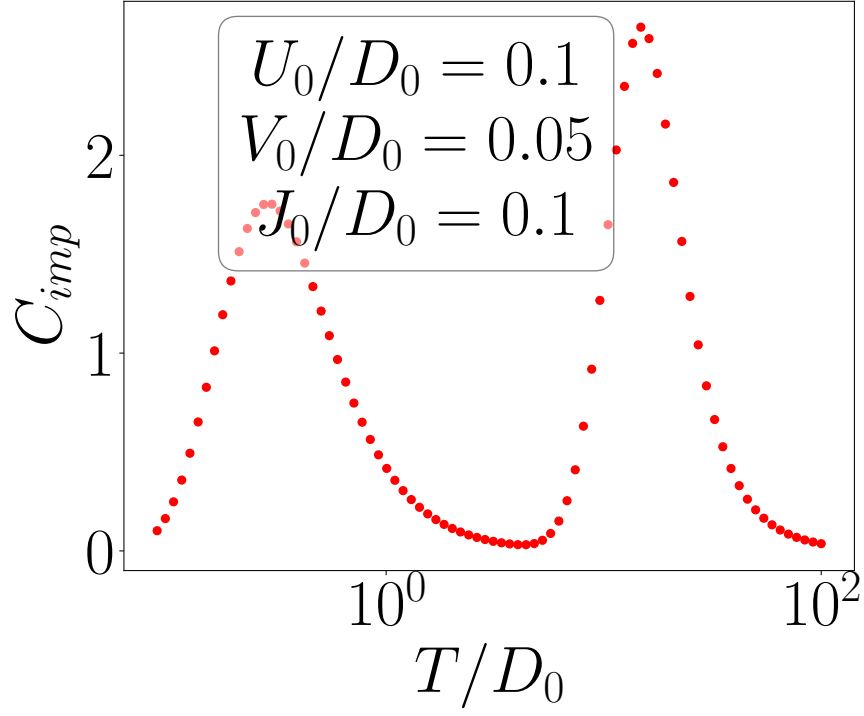


Figure 2.9: Impurity specific heat

where  $\mathcal{O}_\sigma = c_{d\sigma} + S_d^- c_{0\bar{\sigma}} + S_d^z c_{0\sigma}$  is the excitation whose spectral function we are interested in. The excitations defined in  $\mathcal{O}$  incorporates both single-particle excitations brought about by the hybridisation as well as two-particle spin excitations brought about by the spin-exchange term. Since this is in terms of the exact eigenstates, it is a discrete sum of delta-functions. In practice, we get a continuous distribution. To compare with experiment, we need to convert the discrete sum into a continuous function. Following [14], we replace the delta-functions at  $\pm x_n \equiv \pm(E_n - E_0)$  by normalized Gaussian functions

$$\delta(\omega \pm x_n) \rightarrow \frac{1}{\eta_n \sqrt{\pi}} e^{-\left(\frac{\omega \pm x_n}{\eta_n}\right)^2} \quad (2.9.3)$$

The parameter  $\eta_n$  determines the height and width of the Gaussian, and is chosen such that the higher energy poles are broader than the lower energy ones:

$$\eta_n = 4\Delta + \frac{1}{2}|x_n| \quad (2.9.4)$$

$\Delta = \pi\rho(0)V^2$  is the relevant energy scale for the non-interacting ( $U = 0$ ) problem,  $\rho(0)$  being the density of states of the conduction bath at the Fermi energy. As a result, the function that we will numerically compute and plot is

$$\mathcal{A}(\omega) = \sum_{n,0} \frac{1}{d_0 \sqrt{\pi} \eta_n} \left[ \left| \langle 0 | c_{d\sigma} | n \rangle \right|^2 e^{-\left(\frac{\omega - x_n}{\eta_n}\right)^2} + \left| \langle n | c_{d\sigma} | 0 \rangle \right|^2 e^{-\left(\frac{\omega + x_n}{\eta_n}\right)^2} \right] \quad (2.9.5)$$

From the results of Langreth [19], we know that the spectral function at zero frequency is fixed by the occupancy of the impurity. Since we are in the particle-hole symmetric regime, this occupancy is fixed at 1, and hence so is the spectral function height at  $\omega = 0$ . This result has been used to fix the spectral function height at the center during the computations. The fixed-point Hamiltonian  $H^*$  is diagonalized numerically to obtain  $\{E_n, |n\rangle\}$ , for various values of the couplings. The intention here is to get an idea of how the spectral function morphs under the RG. Doing an actual reverse RG (described in 2.15) would require us to diagonalize a huge Hamiltonian. We take the simpler route of tuning the  $U$  from zero to soem large value. This should mimic the journey from the IR theory ( $U = 0$ ) to the UV theory ( $U \gg 0$ ).

The spectral function is plotted for three sets of values in fig. 2.10. For low values of  $U$ , the profile is that of a single peak at zero frequency. This is expected because at the low energy effective theory, the high energy Hubbard side bands have been integrated out. As  $U$  increases, shoulder-like structures appear on either side of the peak, which finally, at larger  $U$ , develop into two side-peaks. This is the microscopic theory, where high energy features are also relevant. The physics of

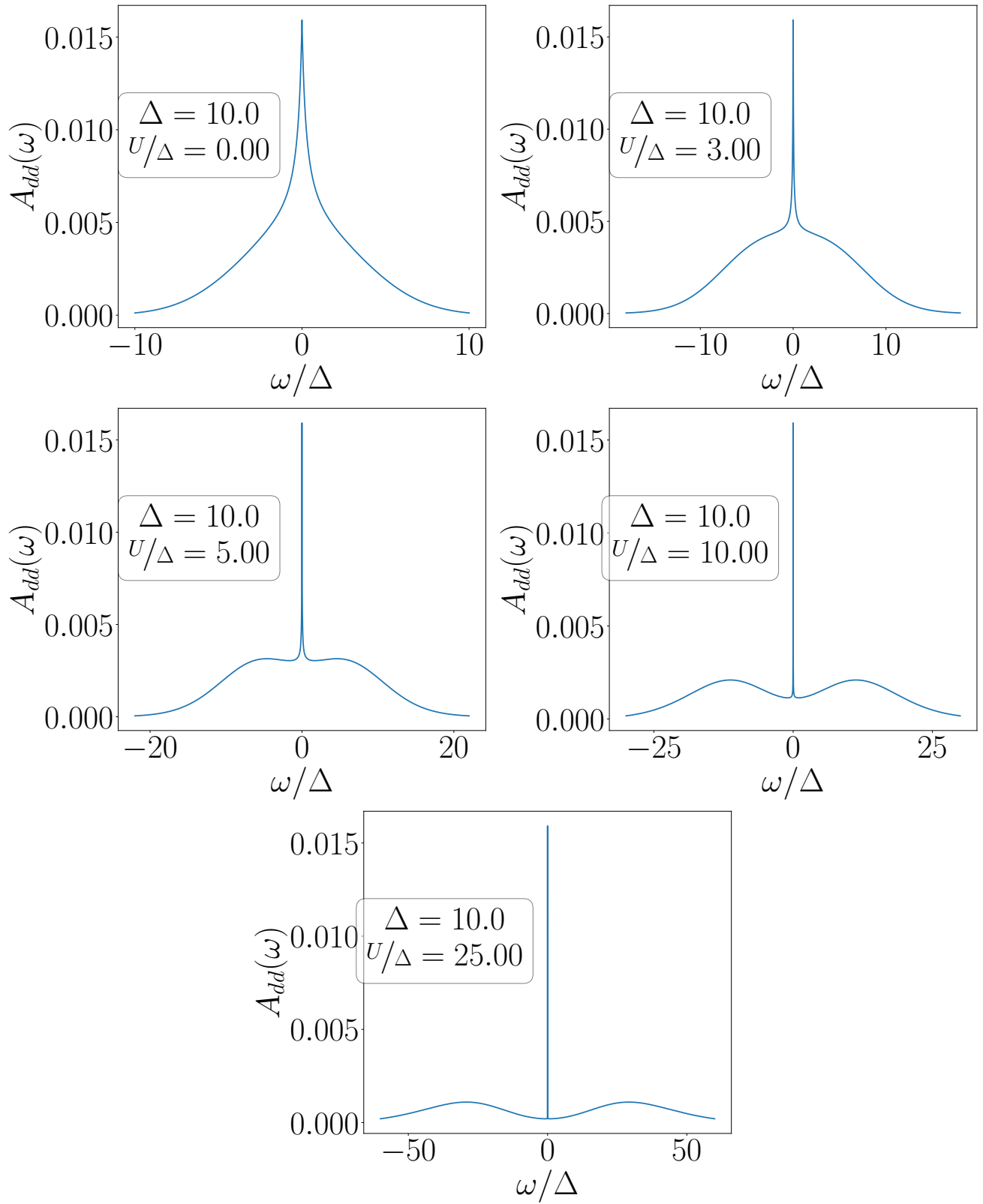


Figure 2.10: Impurity spectral function for multiple values of  $U$ . The increase in value of  $U$  is accompanied by the appearance of the side-peaks.

the three peaks can now be looked into. Since the central peak is at zero energy, it has to do with excitations that do not cost any energy. There are two such excitations: excitations within the spin sector and within the charge sector.

$$\begin{array}{cc} JS_d^- & KC_d^- \\ |\uparrow\rangle \rightleftharpoons |\downarrow\rangle, & |\uparrow\rangle \rightleftharpoons |\downarrow\rangle \\ JS_d^+ & KC_d^+ \end{array} \quad (2.9.6)$$

The thick arrow  $\uparrow$  represents the charge isospin. At particle-hole symmetry, both the spin configurations has energy of  $\epsilon_d$ , while the charge configurations have energy of  $2\epsilon_d + U = 0$  and  $0$ . Hence, no energy is required for these excitations, which is why we see a macroscopic number of cloud electrons resonating with the impurity at the Fermi surface. Also note that if  $\hat{S}_i$  and  $\hat{C}_j$  are two operators of the spin and charge sector ( $i, j \in \{x, y, z\}$ ), then

$$\hat{S}_i \hat{C}_j = \hat{C}_j \hat{S}_i = 0 \quad (2.9.7)$$

We can see this by applying that operator on a basis state. Since the set of four states

$$|\hat{S}_i = \pm \frac{1}{2}, \hat{C}_j = 0\rangle, |\hat{S}_i = 0, \hat{C}_j = \pm \frac{1}{2}\rangle \quad (2.9.8)$$

are all independent, they form a basis. If we apply the operator on these states:

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{S}_i \hat{C}_j |S_i\rangle &= 0, & \hat{C}_j \hat{S}_i |S_i\rangle &= S_i \hat{C}_j |S_i\rangle = 0 \\ \hat{C}_j \hat{S}_i |C_j\rangle &= 0, & \hat{S}_i \hat{C}_j |\hat{C}_j\rangle &= C_j \hat{S}_i |\hat{C}_j\rangle = 0 \end{aligned} \quad (2.9.9)$$

This shows that each operator acts only on its own subspace.  $S_i$  does not act on the charge sector, and vice-versa. There is no single-particle excitation here.

The physics of the side-peaks is that of single number fluctuations on the impurity. These are brought about by the term  $V c_{0\sigma}^\dagger c_{d\sigma} + \text{h.c.}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & V c_{d\bar{\sigma}}^\dagger / V c_{d\sigma} & \\ (\epsilon_d) |\sigma\rangle & \rightleftharpoons & |n_d = 2, 0\rangle (0) \\ & V c_{d\bar{\sigma}} / V c_{d\sigma}^\dagger & \end{array} \quad (2.9.10)$$

These transitions involve energy transfer of the order of  $\epsilon_d$ . This is why, at very small  $U$ , they remain absorbed inside the central peak. These transitions do not involve any spin or charge-flip, rather they take the impurity between the spin and charge sectors.

## 2.10 Effective Hamiltonian for excitations of the Kondo cloud

To find an effective Hamiltonian for the excitations of the Kondo cloud, we will integrate out the impurity part of the wavefunction. The Schrodinger equation for the  $J > K$  ground state is

$$\begin{aligned} E_g & \left[ c_-^s (|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle - |\downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) + c_-^c (|\uparrow\downarrow, 0\rangle + |0, \uparrow\downarrow\rangle) \right] \\ &= \mathcal{H} \left[ c_-^s (|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle - |\downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) + c_-^c (|\uparrow\downarrow, 0\rangle + |0, \uparrow\downarrow\rangle) \right] \\ &= \mathcal{H}_0^* \left[ c_-^s (|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle - |\downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) + c_-^c (|\uparrow\downarrow, 0\rangle + |0, \uparrow\downarrow\rangle) \right] \\ &+ V \sum_{\beta} \left[ c_{2\beta}^\dagger c_{1\beta} - c_{2\beta} c_{1\beta}^\dagger \right] \left[ c_-^s (|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle - |\downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) + c_-^c (|\uparrow\downarrow, 0\rangle + |0, \uparrow\downarrow\rangle) \right] \\ &+ J \vec{S}_d \cdot \vec{s} \left[ c_-^s (|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle - |\downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) + c_-^c (|\uparrow\downarrow, 0\rangle + |0, \uparrow\downarrow\rangle) \right] \\ &+ K \vec{C}_d \cdot \vec{c} \left[ c_-^s (|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle - |\downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) + c_-^c (|\uparrow\downarrow, 0\rangle + |0, \uparrow\downarrow\rangle) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (2.10.1)$$

The last two lines gives

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2} J c_-^s & \left[ s^z (|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle + |\downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) + s^+ |\downarrow, \downarrow\rangle - s^- |\uparrow, \uparrow\rangle \right] + \frac{1}{2} K c_-^c \left[ c^z (|\uparrow\downarrow, 0\rangle - |0, \uparrow\downarrow\rangle) + c^+ |0, 0\rangle \right. \\ & \left. + c^- |2, 2\rangle \right] \end{aligned} \quad (2.10.2)$$

The second line gives

$$\begin{aligned} & V c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger \left[ c_-^s (|0, \downarrow\rangle) + c_-^c (|\downarrow, 0\rangle) \right] + V c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger \left[ c_-^s (-|0, \uparrow\rangle) + c_-^c (|\uparrow, 0\rangle) \right] \\ & - V c_{2\uparrow} \left[ c_-^s (-|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle) + c_-^c (|\uparrow, \uparrow\rangle) \right] - V c_{2\downarrow} \left[ c_-^s (-|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle) + c_-^c (|\downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (2.10.3)$$

We will now write down four equations by comparing the coefficients of  $|\uparrow\rangle, |\downarrow\rangle, |0\rangle$  and  $|2\rangle$  of the impurity sector:

$$\begin{aligned} (E_g - H_0^*) c_-^s |\downarrow\rangle &= V c_-^c (c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger |0\rangle - c_{2\uparrow} |2\rangle) + \frac{1}{2} J c_-^s (s^z |\downarrow\rangle - s^- |\uparrow\rangle) \quad [\text{eq. from } |\uparrow\rangle] \\ (-E_g + H_0^*) c_-^s |\uparrow\rangle &= V c_-^c (c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger |0\rangle - c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger |2\rangle) + \frac{1}{2} J c_-^s (s^z |\uparrow\rangle + s^+ |\downarrow\rangle) \quad [\text{eq. from } |\downarrow\rangle] \\ (E_g - H_0^*) c_-^c |2\rangle &= V c_-^s (c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger |\downarrow\rangle - c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger |\uparrow\rangle) + \frac{1}{2} K c_-^c (-c^z |2\rangle + c^+ |0\rangle) \quad [\text{eq. from } |0\rangle] \\ (E_g - H_0^*) c_-^c |0\rangle &= V c_-^s (c_{2\uparrow} |\uparrow\rangle + c_{2\downarrow} |\downarrow\rangle) + \frac{1}{2} K c_-^c (c^z |0\rangle + c^- |2\rangle) \quad [\text{eq. from } |2\rangle] \end{aligned} \quad (2.10.4)$$

These can be rearranged into

$$\begin{aligned} (E_g - H_0^* - \frac{1}{2} J s^z) |\downarrow\rangle &= V \lambda^{-1} (c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger |0\rangle - c_{2\uparrow} |2\rangle) - \frac{1}{2} J s^- |\uparrow\rangle \\ (E_g - H_0^* + \frac{1}{2} J s^z) |\uparrow\rangle &= V \lambda^{-1} (c_{2\downarrow} |2\rangle - c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger |0\rangle) - \frac{1}{2} J s^+ |\downarrow\rangle \\ (E_g - H_0^* + \frac{1}{2} K c^z) |2\rangle &= V \lambda (c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger |\downarrow\rangle - c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger |\uparrow\rangle) + \frac{1}{2} K c^+ |0\rangle \\ (E_g - H_0^* - \frac{1}{2} K c^z) |0\rangle &= V \lambda (c_{2\uparrow} |\uparrow\rangle + c_{2\downarrow} |\downarrow\rangle) + \frac{1}{2} K c^- |2\rangle \end{aligned} \quad (2.10.5)$$

where  $\lambda = \frac{c_-^s}{c_-^c}$ . We want to find the effective Hamiltonian in the subspace of  $|\downarrow\rangle$ . We first eliminate the charge sector from these equations:

$$\begin{aligned} |0\rangle &= V \lambda \left[ \frac{1}{A_-^K} c_{2\uparrow} + \frac{K}{2} \frac{1}{A_-^K} c^- \frac{1}{A_+^K - \left(\frac{K}{2}\right)^2 c^+ \frac{1}{A_-^K} c^-} \left( \frac{K}{2} c^+ \frac{1}{A_-^K} c_{2\uparrow} - c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger \right) \right] |\uparrow\rangle \\ &+ V \lambda \left[ \frac{1}{A_-^K} c_{2\downarrow} + \frac{K}{2} \frac{1}{A_-^K} c^- \frac{1}{A_+^K - \left(\frac{K}{2}\right)^2 c^+ \frac{1}{A_-^K} c^-} \left( c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger + \frac{K}{2} c^+ \frac{1}{A_-^K} c_{2\downarrow} \right) \right] |\downarrow\rangle \\ |2\rangle &= \frac{V \lambda}{A_+^K - \left(\frac{K}{2}\right)^2 c^+ \frac{1}{A_-^K} c^-} \left[ \left( c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger + \frac{K}{2} c^+ \frac{1}{A_-^K} c_{2\downarrow} \right) |\downarrow\rangle + \left( \frac{K}{2} c^+ \frac{1}{A_-^K} c_{2\uparrow} - c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger \right) |\uparrow\rangle \right] \end{aligned} \quad (2.10.6)$$

where

$$A_\pm^K = E_g - H_0^* \pm \frac{1}{2} K c^z \quad (2.10.7)$$

For ease of labeling, we will think of these equations as

$$|0\rangle = a_0^\uparrow |\uparrow\rangle + a_0^\downarrow |\downarrow\rangle, |2\rangle = a_2^\uparrow |\uparrow\rangle + a_2^\downarrow |\downarrow\rangle \quad (2.10.8)$$

The remaining two equations can then be written as

$$\begin{aligned} A_-^J |\downarrow\rangle &= \frac{V}{\lambda} \left[ c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger (a_0^\uparrow |\uparrow\rangle + a_0^\downarrow |\downarrow\rangle) - c_{2\uparrow} (a_2^\uparrow |\uparrow\rangle + a_2^\downarrow |\downarrow\rangle) \right] - \frac{J}{2} s^- |\uparrow\rangle \\ A_+^J |\uparrow\rangle &= \frac{V}{\lambda} \left[ c_{2\downarrow} (a_2^\uparrow |\uparrow\rangle + a_2^\downarrow |\downarrow\rangle) - c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger (a_0^\uparrow |\uparrow\rangle + a_0^\downarrow |\downarrow\rangle) \right] - \frac{J}{2} s^+ |\downarrow\rangle \end{aligned} \quad (2.10.9)$$



where

$$A_{\pm}^J = E_g - H_0^* \pm \frac{1}{2} J s^z \quad (2.10.10)$$

Eliminating  $|\downarrow\rangle$  and solving for  $|\uparrow\rangle$  gives

$$\begin{aligned} A_+^J |\uparrow\rangle &= \frac{V}{\lambda} \left( c_{2\downarrow} a_2^\uparrow - c_{2\uparrow} a_0^\uparrow \right) |\uparrow\rangle + \left( \frac{V}{\lambda} c_{2\downarrow} a_2^\downarrow - \frac{V}{\lambda} c_{2\uparrow} a_0^\downarrow - \frac{J}{2} s^+ \right) |\downarrow\rangle \\ &= \frac{V}{\lambda} \left( c_{2\downarrow} a_2^\uparrow - c_{2\uparrow} a_0^\uparrow \right) |\uparrow\rangle \\ &\quad + \left[ \frac{V}{\lambda} \left( c_{2\downarrow} a_2^\downarrow - c_{2\uparrow} a_0^\downarrow \right) - \frac{J}{2} s^+ \right] \frac{1}{A_-^J - \frac{V}{\lambda} \left( c_{2\downarrow} a_0^\downarrow - c_{2\uparrow} a_2^\downarrow \right)} \left[ \frac{V}{\lambda} \left( c_{2\downarrow} a_0^\uparrow - c_{2\uparrow} a_2^\uparrow \right) - \frac{J}{2} s^- \right] |\uparrow\rangle \end{aligned} \quad (2.10.11)$$

The effective Hamiltonian for the  $|\uparrow\rangle$  state is

$$\begin{aligned} H_0^* - \frac{J}{2} s^z + \frac{V}{\lambda} \left( c_{2\downarrow} a_2^\uparrow - c_{2\uparrow} a_0^\uparrow \right) &+ \left[ \frac{V}{\lambda} \left( c_{2\downarrow} a_2^\downarrow - c_{2\uparrow} a_0^\downarrow \right) - \frac{J}{2} s^+ \right] \frac{1}{A_-^J - \frac{V}{\lambda} \left( c_{2\downarrow} a_0^\downarrow - c_{2\uparrow} a_2^\downarrow \right)} \\ &\times \left[ \frac{V}{\lambda} \left( c_{2\downarrow} a_0^\uparrow - c_{2\uparrow} a_2^\uparrow \right) - \frac{J}{2} s^- \right] \end{aligned} \quad (2.10.12)$$

To get a clearer picture of this effective Hamiltonian, we will keep up to two-particle interactions. We first write down the full forms of  $a_{0,2}^\sigma$ :

$$\begin{aligned} a_0^\sigma &= V\lambda \left[ \frac{1}{A_-^K} c_{2\sigma} + \frac{K}{2} \frac{1}{A_-^K} c^- \frac{1}{A_+^K - \left(\frac{K}{2}\right)^2 c^+ \frac{1}{A_-^K} c^-} \left( \frac{K}{2} c^+ \frac{1}{A_-^K} c_{2\sigma} - \sigma c_{2\sigma}^\dagger \right) \right] \\ a_2^\sigma &= \frac{V\lambda}{A_+^K - \left(\frac{K}{2}\right)^2 c^+ \frac{1}{A_-^K} c^-} \left( -\sigma c_{2-\sigma}^\dagger + \frac{K}{2} c^+ \frac{1}{A_-^K} c_{2\sigma} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (2.10.13)$$

We will first look at the special case of  $K = 0$ . There, the above expressions simplify to

$$\begin{aligned} a_0^\sigma &= V\lambda \frac{1}{A_-^K} c_{2\sigma} = \frac{V\lambda}{E_g} \left[ 1 + \frac{1}{E_g} (H_0^*) + \frac{1}{E_g^2} (H_0^*)^2 \right] c_{2\sigma} + \mathcal{O}(H_0^{*3}) \\ a_2^\sigma &= -\sigma V\lambda \frac{1}{A_+^K} c_{2-\sigma}^\dagger = -\sigma \frac{V\lambda}{E_g} \left[ 1 + \frac{1}{E_g} (H_0^*) + \frac{1}{E_g^2} (H_0^*)^2 \right] c_{2-\sigma}^\dagger + \mathcal{O}(H_0^{*3}) \end{aligned} \quad (2.10.14)$$

We will make use of the following commutators:

$$\begin{aligned} \left[ (H_0^*)^m, c_{2\sigma} \right] &= - \sum_k \frac{\epsilon_k^m}{\sqrt{N^*}} c_{k\sigma}, & \left[ (H_0^*)^m, c_{2\sigma}^\dagger \right] &= \sum_k \frac{\epsilon_k^m}{\sqrt{N^*}} c_{k\sigma}^\dagger, & m &= 1, 2 \\ \left[ (H_0^*)^m, s^+ \right] &= \sum_{kk'} (\epsilon_k^m - \epsilon_{k'}^m) c_{k\beta}^\dagger c_{k'\bar{\beta}}, & & & m &= 1, 2 \\ \left[ (s^z)^m, c_{2\sigma} \right] &= - \left( \frac{\sigma}{2} \right)^m c_{2\sigma}, & \left[ (s^z)^m, c_{2\sigma}^\dagger \right] &= \left( \frac{\sigma}{2} \right)^m c_{2\sigma}^\dagger, & m &= 1, 2 \\ \left[ (c^z)^m, c_{2\sigma} \right] &= - \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^m c_{2\sigma}, & \left[ (c^z)^m, c_{2\sigma}^\dagger \right] &= \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^m c_{2\sigma}^\dagger, & m &= 1, 2 \end{aligned} \quad (2.10.15)$$

Now we evaluate the various terms in the effective Hamiltonian.

$$c_{2\downarrow} a_2^\uparrow = -\frac{V\lambda}{E_g} c_{2\downarrow} \left[ 1 + \frac{1}{E_g} (H_0^*) + \frac{1}{E_g^2} (H_0^*)^2 \right] c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= -\frac{V\lambda}{E_g} \left[ c_{2\downarrow} + \frac{1}{E_g} (H_0^*) c_{2\downarrow} + \sum_k \frac{\epsilon_k}{E_g \sqrt{N^*}} c_{k\downarrow} + \frac{1}{E_g^2} (H_0^*)^2 c_{2\downarrow} + \sum_k \frac{\epsilon_k^2}{E_g^2 \sqrt{N^*}} c_{k\downarrow} \right] c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger \\
&= -\frac{V\lambda}{E_g} \left[ 1 + \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} + \left( \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} \right)^2 \right] c_{2\downarrow} c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger - \frac{V\lambda}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \left( \frac{\epsilon_k}{E_g} + \frac{\epsilon_k^2}{E_g^2} \right) c_{k\downarrow} c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger \\
c_{2\uparrow} a_2^\downarrow &= -\frac{V\lambda}{E_g} \left[ 1 + \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} + \left( \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} \right)^2 \right] c_{2\uparrow} c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger - \frac{V\lambda}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \left( \frac{\epsilon_k}{E_g} + \frac{\epsilon_k^2}{E_g^2} \right) c_{k\uparrow} c_{k'\uparrow}^\dagger \\
c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger a_0^\uparrow &= c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger \frac{V\lambda}{E_g} \left[ 1 + \frac{1}{E_g} (H_0^*) + \frac{1}{E_g^2} (H_0^*)^2 \right] c_{2\uparrow} \\
&= \frac{V\lambda}{E_g} \left[ 1 + \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} + \left( \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} \right)^2 \right] c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger c_{2\uparrow} - \frac{V\lambda}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \left( \frac{\epsilon_k}{E_g} + \frac{\epsilon_k^2}{E_g^2} \right) c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\uparrow} \\
c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger a_0^\downarrow &= \frac{V\lambda}{E_g} \left[ 1 + \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} + \left( \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} \right)^2 \right] c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger c_{2\downarrow} - \frac{V\lambda}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \left( \frac{\epsilon_k}{E_g} + \frac{\epsilon_k^2}{E_g^2} \right) c_{k\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow} \\
c_{2\downarrow} a_2^\downarrow &= \frac{V\lambda}{E_g} c_{2\downarrow} \left[ 1 + \frac{1}{E_g} (H_0^*) + \frac{1}{E_g^2} (H_0^*)^2 \right] c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger \\
&= \frac{V\lambda}{E_g} \left[ 1 + \frac{1}{E_g} (H_0^*) \right] c_{2\downarrow} c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger + \frac{V\lambda}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \left( \frac{\epsilon_k}{E_g} + \frac{\epsilon_k^2}{E_g^2} \right) c_{k\downarrow} c_{k'\uparrow}^\dagger \\
c_{2\uparrow} a_2^\uparrow &= -\frac{V\lambda}{E_g} \left[ 1 + \frac{1}{E_g} (H_0^*) \right] c_{2\uparrow} c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger - \frac{V\lambda}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \left( \frac{\epsilon_k}{E_g} + \frac{\epsilon_k^2}{E_g^2} \right) c_{k\uparrow} c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger \\
c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger a_0^\downarrow &= \frac{V\lambda}{E_g} \left[ 1 + \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} \right] c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger c_{2\downarrow} - \frac{V\lambda}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \left( \frac{\epsilon_k}{E_g} + \frac{\epsilon_k^2}{E_g^2} \right) c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow} \\
c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger a_0^\uparrow &= \frac{V\lambda}{E_g} \left[ 1 + \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} \right] c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger c_{2\uparrow} - \frac{V\lambda}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \left( \frac{\epsilon_k}{E_g} + \frac{\epsilon_k^2}{E_g^2} \right) c_{k\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k'\uparrow} \\
c_{2\downarrow} a_2^\uparrow - c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger a_0^\uparrow &= -\frac{V\lambda}{E_g} \left[ 1 + \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} + \left( \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} \right)^2 \right] \times 2 + \frac{V\lambda}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \left( \frac{\epsilon_k}{E_g} + \frac{\epsilon_k^2}{E_g^2} \right) (c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\uparrow} - c_{k\downarrow} c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger) \\
c_{2\downarrow} a_2^\downarrow - c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger a_0^\downarrow &= \frac{V\lambda}{E_g} \left[ 1 + \frac{1}{E_g} (H_0^*) \right] c_{2\downarrow} c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger \times 2 + \frac{V\lambda}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \left( \frac{\epsilon_k}{E_g} + \frac{\epsilon_k^2}{E_g^2} \right) (c_{k\downarrow} c_{k'\uparrow}^\dagger + c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow}) \\
c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger a_0^\downarrow - c_{2\uparrow} a_2^\downarrow &= \frac{V\lambda}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \left( \frac{\epsilon_k}{E_g} + \frac{\epsilon_k^2}{E_g^2} \right) (c_{k\uparrow} c_{k'\uparrow}^\dagger - c_{k\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow}) \\
c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger a_0^\uparrow - c_{2\uparrow} a_2^\uparrow &= \frac{V\lambda}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \left( \frac{\epsilon_k}{E_g} + \frac{\epsilon_k^2}{E_g^2} \right) (c_{k\uparrow} c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger - c_{k\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k'\uparrow})
\end{aligned}$$

In all the expressions, we have dropped terms that have more than 4 operators in product. Also, in the last four equations, we have substituted  $\hat{n}_{2\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{2\downarrow} = 1$ , because this is the effective Hamiltonian for the state with  $s^z = \frac{1}{2}$ . We now substitute

these expressions into the effective Hamiltonian:

$$\begin{aligned}
H_0^* - \frac{J}{2}s^z - \frac{2V^2}{E_g} \left[ 1 + \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} + \left( \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} \right)^2 \right] &+ \frac{V^2}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \xi_k \left( c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\uparrow} - c_{k\downarrow} c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger \right) \\
&+ \left[ \frac{V}{\lambda} \left( c_{2\downarrow} a_2^\dagger - c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger a_0^\dagger \right) \right] \frac{1}{A_-^J - \frac{V^2}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \xi_k \left( c_{k\uparrow} c_{k'\uparrow}^\dagger - c_{k\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow} \right)} \left[ \frac{V}{\lambda} \left( c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger a_0^\dagger - c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger a_2^\dagger \right) \right] \\
&+ \left[ \frac{V}{\lambda} \left( c_{2\downarrow} a_2^\dagger - c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger a_0^\dagger \right) \right] \frac{1}{A_-^J - \frac{V^2}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \xi_k \left( c_{k\uparrow} c_{k'\uparrow}^\dagger - c_{k\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow} \right)} \left[ -\frac{J}{2}s^- \right] \\
&+ \left[ -\frac{J}{2}s^+ \right] \frac{1}{A_-^J - \frac{V^2}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \xi_k \left( c_{k\uparrow} c_{k'\uparrow}^\dagger - c_{k\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow} \right)} \left[ \frac{V}{\lambda} \left( c_{2\downarrow}^\dagger a_0^\dagger - c_{2\uparrow}^\dagger a_2^\dagger \right) \right] \\
&+ \frac{J^2}{4} \left[ s^+ \right] \frac{1}{A_-^J - \frac{V^2}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} \xi_k \left( c_{k\uparrow} c_{k'\uparrow}^\dagger - c_{k\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow} \right)} \left[ s^- \right]
\end{aligned} \tag{2.10.16}$$

where  $\xi_k = \frac{\epsilon_k}{E_g} + \frac{\epsilon_k^2}{E_g^2}$ . We first consider only zeroth order terms of the central propagator.

$$\begin{aligned}
H_0^* - \frac{J}{2} \underbrace{s^z}_{\frac{1}{2}} - \frac{2V^2}{E_g} \left[ 1 + \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} + \left( \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} \right)^2 \right] &+ \frac{V^2}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} (\xi_k) \left( c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\uparrow} - c_{k\downarrow} c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger \right) \\
&+ \frac{V^4}{E_g^2 N^{*2} \left( E_g + \frac{J}{4} \right)} \sum_{kk'} (\xi_{k'} + 2 - \xi_k) c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow} \sum_{kk'} (\xi_k + \xi_{k'}) c_{k\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k'\uparrow} \\
&+ \frac{V^2 J}{2E_g \left( E_g + \frac{J}{4} \right) N^*} \sum_{kk'} (\xi_{k'} + 2 - \xi_k) c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow} \sum_{kk'} c_{k\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k'\uparrow} \\
&+ \frac{JV^2}{2E_g \left( E_g + \frac{J}{4} \right) N^*} \sum_{kk'} c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow} \sum_{kk'} (\xi_k + \xi_{k'}) c_{k\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k'\uparrow} \\
&+ \frac{J^2}{4 \left( E_g + \frac{J}{4} \right)} \underbrace{s^+ s^-}_{s^z + \frac{1}{2} = 1}
\end{aligned} \tag{2.10.17}$$

We have set  $s^z = -\frac{1}{2}$  in the denominator, hence the  $E_g = \frac{J}{4}$ . If we also consider the first and second order terms from the central propagator, note that they will produce terms of more than quartic interactions in the first three terms. For the last term, we get

$$\frac{J^2}{4 \left( E_g + \frac{J}{4} \right)} s^+ \left[ \frac{H_0^*}{E_g + \frac{J}{4}} + \left( \frac{H_0^*}{E_g + \frac{J}{4}} \right)^2 \right] s^- \tag{2.10.18}$$

Using the commutator of  $H_0^*$  with  $s^+$  to bring  $H_0^*$  to the left, and using  $s^+ s^- = s^z + \frac{1}{2} = 1$ , we get

$$\frac{J^2}{4 \left( E_g + \frac{J}{4} \right)} \left[ \frac{H_0^*}{E_g + \frac{J}{4}} + \left( \frac{H_0^*}{E_g + \frac{J}{4}} \right)^2 - \sum_{kk'qq'} (\xi_k^J - \xi_{k'}^J) c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow} c_{q\downarrow}^\dagger c_{q'\uparrow} \right] \tag{2.10.19}$$

where  $\xi_k^J = \frac{\epsilon_k}{E_g + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{\epsilon_k^2}{\left(E_g + \frac{J}{4}\right)^2}$ . The full effective Hamiltonian, for  $K = 0$ , up to quartic interactions, is

$$\begin{aligned} H_0^* + \frac{J}{4} \left( \frac{J}{E_g + \frac{J}{4}} - 1 \right) - \frac{2V^2}{E_g} + \frac{V^2}{E_g N^*} \sum_{kk'} (\xi_k) (c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\uparrow} - c_{k\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow}) - \frac{2V^2}{E_g} \left[ \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} + \left( \frac{H_0^*}{E_g} \right)^2 \right] \\ + \frac{J^2}{4 \left( E_g + \frac{J}{4} \right)} \left[ \frac{H_0^*}{E_g + \frac{J}{4}} + \left( \frac{H_0^*}{E_g + \frac{J}{4}} \right)^2 \right] + \sum_{kk'qq'} F_{kk'qq'} c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow} c_{q\downarrow}^\dagger c_{q'\uparrow} \end{aligned} \quad (2.10.20)$$

The coefficient  $F_{kk'qq'}$  is

$$\begin{aligned} F_{kk'qq'} = \frac{V^2}{E_g N^* \left( E_g + \frac{J}{4} \right)} \left[ \frac{V^2}{E_g N^*} (\xi_{k'} + 2 - \xi_k) (\xi_q + \xi_{q'}) + \frac{J}{2} (\xi_{k'} + 2 - \xi_k + \xi_q + \xi_{q'}) \right] \\ + \frac{J^2}{4 \left( E_g + \frac{J}{4} \right)} (\xi_{k'}^J - \xi_k^J) \end{aligned} \quad (2.10.21)$$

There are two main types of interactions that gets generated upon integrating out the impurity. One is the Fermi liquid type interactions arising from the  $H_0^{*2}$  terms. The Fermi liquid part of the Hamiltonian is

$$\begin{aligned} \left[ \frac{J^2}{4 \left( E_g + \frac{J}{4} \right)^2} - \frac{2V^2}{E_g^2} \right] H_0^* + \left[ \frac{J^2}{4 \left( E_g + \frac{J}{4} \right)^2} - \frac{2V^2}{E_g^3} \right] H_0^{*2} \\ = \left[ \frac{J^2}{4 \left( E_g + \frac{J}{4} \right)^2} - \frac{2V^2}{E_g^2} \right] \left[ H_0^* + \sum_{kk'\sigma\sigma'} f_{kk'} \hat{n}_{k\sigma} \hat{n}_{k'\sigma'} \right] \end{aligned} \quad (2.10.22)$$

where the Landau parameter is given by

$$f_{kk'} = \left[ \frac{J^2}{4 \left( E_g + \frac{J}{4} \right)^2} - \frac{2V^2}{E_g^2} \right]^{-1} \left[ \frac{J^2}{4 \left( E_g + \frac{J}{4} \right)^3} - \frac{2V^2}{E_g^3} \right] \epsilon_k \epsilon_{k'} \quad (2.10.23)$$

The more interesting interaction is the off-diagonal term

$$\sum_{kk'qq'} F_{kk'qq'} c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow} c_{q\downarrow}^\dagger c_{q'\uparrow} \quad (2.10.24)$$

This interaction arises from the enhanced entanglement between the impurity and the conduction electrons; removing the impurity from the singlet and the triplet generates these off-diagonal scatterings. As such, this is an indicator of the macroscopic entanglement of the singlet formed at the IR fixed point, and plotted in fig. 2.13.

We also wish to point out that this scattering is a signature of the change in Luttinger's count in going from the free orbital or local moment fixed point to the strong coupling fixed point, as shown in eq. (2.14.28). Both this off-diagonal scattering as well as the change in Luttinger's count are a direct consequence of the non-number conserving term  $V c_k^\dagger c_d$  in the full Hamiltonian. The topological change of Luttinger's count is concomitant with the presence of the off-diagonal scattering term in the effective Hamiltonian. *Just the Fermi liquid piece in eq. (2.10.23) will give neither the enhanced mutual information nor the change in Luttinger's count.*

## 2.11 Obtaining the real space low energy Hamiltonian: the local Fermi liquid

The next step is to obtain the lowest excitations of the fixed point Hamiltonian, in real space. We will work in the  $U > 0$  regime. For  $V, J \gg 1$ , the impurity couples very strongly with the zeroth site, and at zeroth order, it suffices to say that the

zeroth site decouples from the rest of the lattice. This zeroth Hamiltonian then consists of two sites interacting with each other through  $V$  and  $J$  (the two site problem analysed before).

$$H_0^* = \sum_{\sigma} \left( V^* c_{0\sigma}^\dagger c_{d\sigma} + \text{h.c.} \right) + J^* \vec{S}_d \cdot \vec{s} - \frac{1}{2} U^* \left( \hat{n}_{d\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{d\downarrow} \right)^2 \quad (2.11.1)$$

$$|\Psi\rangle_1 = c_s \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle - |\downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) + c_c \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow\downarrow, 0\rangle + |0, \uparrow\downarrow\rangle), \quad E_1 = -V^* \sqrt{\gamma^2 + 4} - \frac{1}{4} U^* - \frac{3}{8} J^* \quad (2.11.2)$$

These were obtained in eq. (2.4.5). The quantities  $\gamma$  and  $c_{s,c}$  were defined in and around eq. (2.4.6).

We start with the ground state  $|\Psi\rangle_1$  and the star graph as the zeroth level ground state and Hamiltonian, and then add a nearest-neighbour hopping term as a perturbation of the zeroth Hamiltonian. We know that the ground state for the interacting part is predominantly the spin-singlet (it was shown while calculating the ground states of the effective zero-mode Hamiltonian that the ground state is a mixture of singlet and triplet, and the triplet part dies out at large system sizes, see eq. (2.5.1)), so we will take that as our reference state and treat the hopping part that connects the origin to the first site,

$$H_X = t \sum_{\vec{r}_1, \sigma} c_{0\sigma}^\dagger c_{\vec{r}_1, \sigma} + \text{h.c.} \equiv v^\dagger + v \quad (2.11.3)$$

as a weak perturbation.  $\vec{r}_1$  here sums over the sites that are nearest to the origin. Once this perturbation is taken care of up to a certain order, we will have a decoupled singlet formed by the impurity and the zeroth site, and the rest of the lattice formed by  $N - 1$  sites along with the interaction induced by the perturbation. To be precise, the goal is to integrate out the perturbation and generate an effective Hamiltonian in the subspace of the minimal energy states of the two site Hamiltonian, and this effective Hamiltonian will therefore describe the lowest excitations on top of the ground state  $|\Psi\rangle_1$ . The minimal energy subspace is given by the states:

$$|\Phi\rangle_i = |\Psi\rangle_1 \otimes |\hat{n}_{1\uparrow}, \hat{n}_{1\downarrow}\rangle, \quad \text{where } i \in \begin{cases} 0 : & \hat{n}_{1\uparrow} = \hat{n}_{1\downarrow} = 0 \\ 1 : & 1 - \hat{n}_{1\uparrow} = \hat{n}_{1\downarrow} = 0 \\ 2 : & \hat{n}_{1\uparrow} = 1 - \hat{n}_{1\downarrow} = 0 \\ 3 : & 1 - \hat{n}_{1\uparrow} = 1 - \hat{n}_{1\downarrow} = 0 \end{cases} \quad (2.11.4)$$

The effective Hamiltonian will be calculated using perturbation theory in  $\frac{H_X^n}{H_0^{*n-1}}$ . Since an odd number of scattering processes cannot bring the initial state back to itself, such orders will be absent from the effective Hamiltonian.

### 2.11.1 Second order effective Hamiltonian

We first consider the case of  $n = 2$ . The renormalisation of the effective Hamiltonian in the ground state subspace, at this order, is given by

$$\Delta H = \sum_{ij, n} |\Phi\rangle_i \langle \Phi|_i H_X |\Psi\rangle_n \frac{1}{E_{\text{gs}} - E_n} \langle \Psi|_n H_X |\Phi\rangle_j \langle \Phi|_j = \sum_{ij} |\Phi\rangle_i \langle \Phi|_i \langle \Phi|_j v + v^\dagger |\Psi\rangle_n \frac{1}{E_{\text{gs}} - E_n} \langle \Psi|_n v + v^\dagger |\Phi\rangle_j. \quad (2.11.5)$$

Here,  $|\Psi\rangle_n$  are the eigenstates of the two site problem, with eigenvalue  $E_n$ . The total scattering process can be described as  $H_X$  acting on  $|\Phi\rangle_j$  to excite to  $|\Psi\rangle_n$ , and then a subsequent  $H_X$  acting on  $|\Psi\rangle_n$  to decay back to  $|\Phi\rangle_j$  and into the ground state manifold. Since  $|\Phi\rangle_{i,j}$  are eigenstates of the two site Hamiltonian, they are all eigenstates of the total number operator  $\hat{n}_{d0} = \sum_{\sigma} (\hat{n}_{d\sigma} + \hat{n}_{0\sigma})$  for the two site model, with eigenvalue 2. Since we are to finally return to the ground state manifold, only those processes in  $H_X^2$  are allowed that conserve  $\hat{n}_{d0}$ . These processes are  $v, v^\dagger$  and  $v^\dagger, v$ . This also means that the total number of particles on site 1 will remain constant in the process, and we will have  $|\Phi\rangle_i = |\Phi\rangle_j$ .

$$\Delta H = \sum_i |\Phi\rangle_i \langle \Phi|_i \frac{1}{E_{\text{gs}} - E_n} \left( \langle \Phi|_i v^\dagger |\Psi\rangle_n \langle \Psi|_n v |\Phi\rangle_i + \langle \Phi|_i v |\Psi\rangle_n \langle \Psi|_n v^\dagger |\Phi\rangle_i \right). \quad (2.11.6)$$

If we define the matrix element  $v_{ni} \equiv \langle \Psi|_n v |\Phi\rangle_i$  of  $v$  and the excitation energy  $\delta E_n = E_n - E_{\text{gs}}$ , we can write the renormalisation as

$$\Delta H = \sum_{i, n} \frac{|v_{ni}|^2 + |v_{in}|^2}{-\delta E_n} |\Phi\rangle_i \langle \Phi|_i. \quad (2.11.7)$$

We now look at each  $|\Phi_i\rangle$  separately. For  $|\Phi_i\rangle = |\Phi\rangle_0 = |\Psi\rangle_1 \otimes |0, 0\rangle$ , we can write

$$v^\dagger |\Phi\rangle_i = 0, \quad v |\Phi\rangle_i = \frac{t}{\sqrt{2}} \sum_{\sigma} \bar{\sigma} \left( c_s^- |\sigma, 0\rangle + c_c^- |0, \sigma\rangle \right) |\bar{\sigma}\rangle \quad (2.11.8)$$

The first relation gives  $v_{in} = \langle \Phi|_i v |\Psi\rangle_n = \left( \langle \Psi|_n v^\dagger |\Phi\rangle_i \right)^* = 0$ . The set of states that give non-zero  $v_{in}^\dagger$  are specific elements of the set of eigenstates that have a total of either 1 or 3 electrons on the impurity and zeroth sites:

$$|\Psi\rangle_n = |\Psi\rangle_{\pm, \sigma}^{s, p} = -\sqrt{2} \left( a_{1, \pm} |\sigma, p\rangle + a_{2, \pm} |p, \sigma\rangle \right) \otimes |s\rangle, \quad \sigma = \uparrow, \downarrow, \quad E_{\pm, \sigma}^{s, p} = -\frac{U}{4} \pm \frac{1}{2} \Delta; \quad (2.11.9)$$

here,  $s$  is a string from the set  $\{0, \uparrow, \downarrow, 2\}$  and represents the configuration of the first site  $|s\rangle$  in direct product with the impurity and zeroth site entangled composite state, and  $p$  is either 2 or 0 such that  $p+1 (= 1 \text{ or } 3)$  represents the total number of electrons on the impurity and zeroth sites. For  $|\Phi\rangle_0$ , only  $s = \bar{\sigma}$  and  $p = 0$  give non-zero inner product. The coefficients are defined as  $a_{1, \pm} = \frac{4V}{\sqrt{2}\mathcal{N}_{\pm}}, a_{2, \pm} = \frac{U \pm 2\Delta}{\sqrt{2}\mathcal{N}_{\pm}}$ . The inner product is

$$v_{\pm, \sigma, i} = \langle \Psi_{\pm, \sigma}^{\bar{\sigma}, 0} | v |\Phi_i\rangle = \sigma t \left[ a_{1, \pm} c_s^- + a_{2, \pm} c_c^- \right] \quad (2.11.10)$$

$\mathcal{N}_{\pm} = \sqrt{16V^2 + (U \pm 2\Delta)^2}$  is the normalisation factor and  $\Delta = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{U^2 + 16V^2}$ . The renormalisation for this value of  $i$  then becomes

$$(\Delta H)_{i=0} = |\Phi\rangle_0 \langle \Phi|_0 \sum_n \frac{|v_{ni}|^2}{-\delta E_n} = |\Phi\rangle_0 \langle \Phi|_0 \sum_{\sigma, \pm} \frac{|v_{\pm, \sigma, i}|^2}{-\delta E_{\pm}^{\sigma}} = -|\Phi\rangle_0 \langle \Phi|_0 2t^2 \sum_{\pm} \frac{\left[ a_{1, \pm} c_s^- + a_{2, \pm} c_c^- \right]^2}{\delta E_{\pm}^{\sigma}} \quad (2.11.11)$$

where  $\delta E_{\pm}^{\sigma} = E_{\pm}^{\sigma} - E_{\text{gs}}$ .

For  $i = 1$ , we have  $|\Phi\rangle_1 = |\Psi\rangle_1 \otimes |\uparrow\rangle$ . Carrying out a similar calculation above, we get

$$v |\Phi\rangle_1 = t \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( c_s^- |\uparrow, 0, 2\rangle + c_c^- |0, \uparrow, 2\rangle \right), \quad |\psi\rangle_n = |\Psi\rangle_{\pm, \uparrow}^{2, 0}, \quad v_{ni} = -t \left( c_s^- a_{1, \pm} + c_c^- a_{2, \pm} \right) \quad (2.11.12)$$

$$v^\dagger |\Phi\rangle_1 = t \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( c_s^- |\uparrow, 2, 0\rangle - c_c^- |2, \uparrow, 0\rangle \right), \quad |\psi\rangle_n = |\Psi\rangle_{\pm, \uparrow}^{0, 2}, \quad v_{in} = -t \left( c_s^- a_{1, \pm} - c_c^- a_{2, \pm} \right) \quad (2.11.13)$$

$$(\Delta H)_{i=1} = -|\Phi\rangle_1 \langle \Phi|_1 2t^2 \sum_{\pm} \frac{a_{1, \pm}^2 c_s^{-2} + a_{2, \pm}^2 c_c^{-2}}{\delta E_{\pm}^{\sigma}} \quad (2.11.14)$$

The total Hamiltonian  $H_0^* + H_X$  is invariant under the transformations  $c_\sigma^\dagger \rightarrow c_\sigma, t \rightarrow -t$ . Since the renormalisation only involves even powers of  $t$ , we can conclude that the renormalisation for  $i = 2$  and  $i = 3$  will be the same as that of  $i = 1$  and  $i = 0$  respectively. The total renormalisation at second order is

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta H &= -\sum_{i=0}^3 |\Phi\rangle_i \langle \Phi|_i 2t^2 \sum_{\pm} \frac{a_{1, \pm}^2 c_s^{-2} + a_{2, \pm}^2 c_c^{-2}}{\delta E_{\pm}^{\sigma}} - \left( |\Phi\rangle_0 \langle \Phi|_0 + |\Phi\rangle_3 \langle \Phi|_3 \right) 4t^2 \sum_{\pm} \frac{a_{1, \pm} a_{2, \pm} c_s^- c_c^-}{\delta E_{\pm}^{\sigma}} \\ &= -\sum_{i=0}^3 |\Phi\rangle_i \langle \Phi|_i t^2 \sum_{\pm} \frac{1}{\mathcal{N}_{\pm}^2} \frac{\left( 4V c_s^- \right)^2 + (U \pm 2\Delta)^2 c_c^{-2}}{\delta E_{\pm}^{\sigma}} - \left( |\Phi\rangle_0 \langle \Phi|_0 + |\Phi\rangle_3 \langle \Phi|_3 \right) \sum_{\pm} \frac{t^2}{\mathcal{N}_{\pm}^2} \frac{8V c_s^- (U \pm 2\Delta) c_c^-}{\delta E_{\pm}^{\sigma}} \end{aligned} \quad (2.11.15)$$

Since the  $|\hat{n}_{1\sigma}, \hat{n}_{1\bar{\sigma}}\rangle$  form a complete set, we have  $\sum_{i=0}^3 |\Phi\rangle_i \langle \Phi|_i = |\Psi\rangle_1 \langle \Psi|_1$ , and the first term becomes a constant. The second term is a local Fermi liquid term on the first site:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta H &= |\Psi\rangle_1 \langle \Psi|_1 \left[ \text{constant} - \left\{ \hat{n}_{1\uparrow} \hat{n}_{1\downarrow} + (1 - \hat{n}_{1\uparrow}) (1 - \hat{n}_{1\downarrow}) \right\} \sum_{\pm} \frac{t^2}{\mathcal{N}_{\pm}^2} \frac{8V c_s^- (U \pm 2\Delta) c_c^-}{\delta E_{\pm}^{\sigma}} \right] \\ &= |\Psi\rangle_1 \langle \Psi|_1 \left[ \text{constant} + \left( \hat{n}_{1\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{1\downarrow} \right)^2 \sum_{\pm} \frac{t^2}{\mathcal{N}_{\pm}^2} \frac{8V c_s^- (U \pm 2\Delta) c_c^-}{\delta E_{\pm}^{\sigma}} \right] \end{aligned} \quad (2.11.16)$$

In the strong coupling regime, we have  $J, V \gg U$ , and we can then approximate:

$$\delta E_{\pm}^{\sigma} \simeq \frac{3J}{8} + \sqrt{4V^2 - \left(\frac{3J}{8}\right)^2} \mp V, \quad U \pm 2\Delta \simeq \pm 4V, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{N}_{\pm}^2 \simeq 32V^2 \quad (2.11.17)$$

Substituting this gives

$$\Delta H = |\Psi\rangle_1 \langle \Psi|_1 \left[ \text{constant} - \left(\hat{n}_{1\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{1\downarrow}\right)^2 \frac{2t^2 V c_s^- c_c^-}{2\left(\frac{3J}{8}\right)^2 + 3V^2 + \frac{3J}{4}\sqrt{4V^2 + \left(\frac{3J}{8}\right)^2}} \right] \quad (2.11.18)$$

## 2.11.2 Fourth order effective Hamiltonian

Using fourth order perturbation theory, we can write the effective Hamiltonian renormalisation at that order in the form

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta H &= - \sum_i |\Phi\rangle_i \langle \Phi|_i \left[ \sum_{lmn} \frac{\langle \Phi_i | H_X | \Psi_l \rangle \langle \Psi_l | H_X | \Psi_m \rangle \langle \Psi_m | H_X | \Psi_n \rangle \langle \Psi_n | H_X | \Phi_i \rangle}{\delta E_l \delta E_m \delta E_n} + \Delta^{(2)} H \sum_n \frac{|\langle \Psi_n | H_X | \Phi_i \rangle|^2}{(\delta E_n)^2} \right], \\ &= - \sum_i |\Phi\rangle_i \langle \Phi|_i \left[ \sum_m \frac{1}{\delta E_m} \left\| \sum_n \frac{1}{\delta E_n} (H_X)_{mn} (H_X)_{ni} \right\|^2 + \Delta^{(2)} H \sum_n \frac{1}{(\delta E_n)^2} \left\| (H_X)_{ni} \right\|^2 \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (2.11.19)$$

We can have at most two successive  $v^\dagger$  or two successive  $v$  act on a particular state. Any more would lead to  $c_\sigma^\dagger |\hat{n}_\sigma = 2\rangle = 0$ . This limits the possible scattering processes (in the first term) to the following channels:

$$a. vv^\dagger vv^\dagger, \quad b. v^\dagger vv^\dagger v, \quad c. vvv^\dagger v^\dagger, \quad d. v^\dagger v^\dagger vv. \quad (2.11.20)$$

We start with  $i = 0$ . Out of the four channels  $a$  through  $d$ , only  $b$  and  $d$  survive. For  $i = 0$ , we already know the relevant  $|\Psi\rangle_n$  and hence the  $(H_X)_{ni} = v_{ni}$  from eq. (2.11.10).

$$v_{\pm\sigma,i} = \langle \Psi_{\pm,\sigma}^{\bar{\sigma},0} | v | \Phi_i \rangle = \sigma t \left[ a_{1,\pm} c_s^- + a_{2,\pm} c_c^- \right] = \sigma t \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \quad (2.11.21)$$

where we have defined the sum and difference  $\mathcal{S}_{\pm}^{\pm} = a_{1,\pm} c_s^{\pm} + a_{2,\pm} c_c^{\pm}$ ,  $\mathcal{D}_{\pm}^{\pm} = a_{1,\pm} c_s^{\pm} - a_{2,\pm} c_c^{\pm}$ . For channel  $b$ , we then proceed as follows:

$$|\Psi\rangle_{\pm,\sigma}^{\bar{\sigma},0} = -\sqrt{2} \left( a_{1,\pm} |\sigma, 0\rangle + a_{2,\pm} |0, \sigma\rangle \right) \otimes |\bar{\sigma}\rangle \quad (2.11.22)$$

$$v^\dagger |\Psi\rangle_n = v^\dagger |\Psi\rangle_{\pm,\sigma}^{\bar{\sigma},0} = \sqrt{2} t \left( a_{1,\pm} |\sigma, \bar{\sigma}\rangle + a_{2,\pm} |0, \sigma\bar{\sigma}\rangle \right) \otimes |0\rangle \quad (2.11.23)$$

$$|\Psi\rangle_m = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle + |\downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) \otimes |0\rangle \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|2, 0\rangle - |0, 2\rangle) \otimes |0\rangle \\ \left[ \frac{c_s^+}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle - |\downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) + \frac{c_c^+}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow\downarrow, 0\rangle + |0, \uparrow\downarrow\rangle) \right] \otimes |0\rangle \end{cases} \implies (H_X)_{m,\pm\sigma} = \begin{cases} ta_{1\pm} \\ \bar{\sigma} ta_{2\pm} \\ \sigma t (a_{1\pm} c_s^+ + a_{2\pm} c_c^+) = \sigma t \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^+ \end{cases} \quad (2.11.24)$$

$$\frac{1}{\delta E_m} \left\| \sum_n \frac{1}{\delta E_n} (H_X)_{mn} (H_X)_{ni} \right\|^2 = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\delta E_{ST}} \left( \sum_{\sigma,\pm} \frac{t^2}{\delta E_{\pm}} \sigma a_{1\pm} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \right)^2 = 0 \\ \frac{1}{\delta E_{CS}} \left( \sum_{\pm,\sigma} \frac{t^2}{\delta E_{\pm}} a_{2\pm} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \right)^2 = \frac{4t^4}{\delta E_{CS}} \left( \sum_{\pm} \frac{1}{\delta E_{\pm}} a_{2\pm} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \right)^2 \\ \frac{1}{\delta E_2} \left( - \sum_{\pm,\sigma} \frac{t^2}{\delta E_{\pm}} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^+ \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \right)^2 = \frac{4t^4}{\delta E_2} \left( \sum_{\pm} \frac{1}{\delta E_{\pm}} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^+ \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \right)^2 \end{cases} \quad (2.11.25)$$

$E_{ST}$ ,  $E_{CS}$  and  $E_2$  are the energies of the spin triplet zero, charge singlet and spin singlet+charge triplet excited states of the set  $|\Psi\rangle_m$  in eq. (2.11.24).

We now turn to channel  $d$ :

$$v|\Psi\rangle_n = v|\Psi\rangle_{\pm,\sigma}^{\bar{\sigma},0} = \sqrt{2}t\sigma a_{2\pm}|0,0\rangle \otimes |2\rangle, \quad |\Psi\rangle_m = |0,0,2\rangle, \quad (H_X)_{m,\pm\sigma} = \sqrt{2}t\sigma a_{2\pm} \quad (2.11.26)$$

$$\frac{1}{\delta E_m} \left\| \sum_n \frac{1}{\delta E_n} (H_X)_{mn} (H_X)_{ni} \right\|^2 = \frac{8t^4}{\delta E_{00}} \left( \sum_{\pm} \frac{1}{\delta E_{\pm}} a_{2\pm} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \right)^2 \quad (2.11.27)$$

$E_{00}$  is the energy of the state  $|0,0,2\rangle$ .

Having accounted for both channels, we will calculate the second part of the effective Hamiltonian in eq. (2.11.19), the part involving  $\Delta^{(2)}H$ . We already know, from eq. (2.11.11), that

$$\Delta^{(2)}H_{i=0} = -2t^2 \sum_{\pm} \frac{1}{\delta E_{\pm}} (\mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-)^2 \quad (2.11.28)$$

Also, from the expression of  $v_{\pm\sigma,i}$ , we get

$$\sum_n \frac{1}{(\delta E_n)^2} \left\| (H_X)_{ni} \right\|^2 = \sum_{\pm} \frac{2t^2}{(\delta E_{\pm})^2} (\mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-)^2 \quad (2.11.29)$$

Combining it all, the total renormalisation in  $i=0$  is

$$-|\Phi\rangle_0 \langle \Phi|_0 4t^4 \left[ \left( \frac{1}{\delta E_{CS}} + \frac{2}{\delta E_{00}} \right) \left( \sum_{\pm} \frac{a_{2\pm} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}} \right)^2 + \frac{1}{\delta E_2} \left( \sum_{\pm} \frac{\mathcal{S}_{\pm}^+ \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}} \right)^2 - \sum_{\pm} \frac{(\mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-)^2}{\delta E_{\pm}} \sum_{\pm} \left( \frac{\mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}} \right)^2 \right] \quad (2.11.30)$$

We now come to  $i=1$ :  $|\Phi\rangle_1 = |\Psi\rangle_1 \otimes |\uparrow\rangle$ . Channels  $a$  and  $b$  are non-zero here. We start with channel  $b$ :  $v^\dagger v v^\dagger v$ . We already know, from eq. (2.11.12), that

$$v|\Phi\rangle_1 = t \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( c_s^- |\uparrow,0,2\rangle + c_c^- |0,\uparrow,2\rangle \right), \quad |\psi\rangle_n = |\Psi\rangle_{\pm,\uparrow}^{2,0} = -\sqrt{2} \left( a_{1,\pm} |\uparrow,0\rangle + a_{2,\pm} |0,\uparrow\rangle \right) \otimes |2\rangle, \quad (H_X)_{ni} = -t \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \quad (2.11.31)$$

Moving forward:

$$v^\dagger |\Psi\rangle_n = \sqrt{2}t \left( a_{1,\pm} |\uparrow,\uparrow\rangle \otimes |\downarrow\rangle - a_{1,\pm} |\uparrow,\downarrow\rangle \otimes |\uparrow\rangle - a_{2,\pm} |0,2\rangle \otimes |\uparrow\rangle \right) \quad (2.11.32)$$

$$|\Psi\rangle_m = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow,\downarrow\rangle + |\downarrow,\uparrow\rangle) \otimes |\uparrow\rangle \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|2,0\rangle - |0,2\rangle) \otimes |\uparrow\rangle \\ \left[ \frac{c_s^+}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow,\downarrow\rangle - |\downarrow,\uparrow\rangle) + \frac{c_c^+}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow\downarrow,0\rangle + |0,\uparrow\downarrow\rangle) \right] \otimes |\uparrow\rangle \\ |\uparrow,\uparrow\rangle \otimes |\downarrow\rangle \end{cases} \implies (H_X)_{m,\pm} (H_X)_{\pm,i} = \begin{cases} t^2 a_{1\pm} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \\ -t^2 a_{2\pm} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \\ t^2 \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^+ \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \\ -\sqrt{2}t^2 a_{1\pm} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \end{cases} \quad (2.11.33)$$

$$\frac{1}{\delta E_m} \left\| \sum_n \frac{1}{\delta E_n} (H_X)_{mn} (H_X)_{ni} \right\|^2 = \begin{cases} \frac{t^4}{\delta E_{ST}} \left( \sum_{\pm} \frac{1}{\delta E_{\pm}} a_{1\pm} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \right)^2 \\ \frac{t^4}{\delta E_{CS}} \left( \sum_{\pm} \frac{1}{\delta E_{\pm}} a_{2\pm} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \right)^2 \\ \frac{t^4}{\delta E_2} \left( \sum_{\pm} \frac{1}{\delta E_{\pm}} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^+ \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \right)^2 \\ \frac{2t^4}{\delta E_{\uparrow\uparrow}} \left( \sum_{\pm} \frac{1}{\delta E_{\pm}} a_{1\pm} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- \right)^2 \end{cases} \quad (2.11.34)$$

$E_{\uparrow\uparrow}$  is the energy of the upwards polarised state  $|\uparrow,\uparrow\rangle \otimes |\downarrow\rangle$ .

Next is channel  $a$ :  $vv^\dagger vv^\dagger$ . Using eq. (2.11.13) and following the same steps as above, we get:

$$v^\dagger |\Phi\rangle_1 = t \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( c_s^- |\uparrow,2,0\rangle - c_c^- |2,\uparrow,0\rangle \right), \quad |\Psi\rangle_n = |\Psi\rangle_{\pm,\uparrow}^{0,2} = -\sqrt{2} \left( a_{1,\pm} |\uparrow,2\rangle + a_{2,\pm} |2,\uparrow\rangle \right) \otimes |0\rangle, \quad (H_X)_{ni} = -t \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^- \quad (2.11.35)$$



$$v|\Psi\rangle_n = \sqrt{2}t \left( a_{1,\pm} |\uparrow, \uparrow\rangle \otimes |\downarrow\rangle - a_{1,\pm} |\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle \otimes |\uparrow\rangle + a_{2,\pm} |2, 0\rangle \otimes |\uparrow\rangle \right) \quad (2.11.36)$$

$$|\Psi\rangle_m = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle + |\downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) \otimes |\uparrow\rangle \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|2, 0\rangle - |0, 2\rangle) \otimes |\uparrow\rangle \\ \left[ \frac{c_s^+}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow, \downarrow\rangle - |\downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) + \frac{c_c^+}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow, 0\rangle + |0, \uparrow, \downarrow\rangle) \right] \otimes |\uparrow\rangle \\ |\uparrow, \uparrow\rangle \otimes |\downarrow\rangle \end{cases} \implies (H_X)_{m,\pm} (H_X)_{\pm,i} = \begin{cases} t^2 a_{1\pm} \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^- \\ -t^2 a_{2\pm} \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^- \\ t^2 \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^+ \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^- \\ -\sqrt{2} t^2 a_{1\pm} \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^- \end{cases} \quad (2.11.37)$$

$$\frac{1}{\delta E_m} \left\| \sum_n \frac{1}{\delta E_n} (H_X)_{mn} (H_X)_{ni} \right\|^2 = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\delta E_{ST}} \left( \sum_{\pm} \frac{t^2}{\delta E_{\pm}} a_{1\pm} \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^- \right)^2 \\ \frac{t^4}{\delta E_{CS}} \left( \sum_{\pm} \frac{1}{\delta E_{\pm}} a_{2\pm} \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^- \right)^2 \\ \frac{t^4}{\delta E_2} \left( \sum_{\pm} \frac{1}{\delta E_{\pm}} \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^+ \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^- \right)^2 \\ \frac{2t^4}{\delta E_{\uparrow\uparrow}} \left( \sum_{\pm} \frac{1}{\delta E_{\pm}} a_{1\pm} \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^- \right)^2 \end{cases} \quad (2.11.38)$$

For the final part, we again use  $\Delta^{(2)} H_{i=1} = -t^2 \sum_{\pm} \frac{1}{\delta E_{\pm}} \left[ (\mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-)^2 + (\mathcal{D}_{\pm}^-)^2 \right]$ . Also, since  $(H_X)_{ni} = (v + v^\dagger)_{ni}$ , we have

$$\sum_n \frac{1}{(\delta E_n)^2} \left\| (H_X)_{ni} \right\|^2 = t^2 \sum_{\pm} \left[ \left( \frac{\mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{\mathcal{D}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}} \right)^2 \right] \quad (2.11.39)$$

Combining all the terms, we get

$$\begin{aligned} -|\Phi\rangle_1 \langle \Phi|_1 4t^4 & \left[ \left( \frac{1}{\delta E_{ST}} + \frac{2}{\delta E_{\uparrow\uparrow}} \right) \left\{ \left( \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\pm} \frac{a_{1\pm} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\pm} \frac{a_{1\pm} \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}} \right)^2 \right\} + \frac{1}{\delta E_{CS}} \left\{ \left( \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\pm} \frac{a_{2\pm} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}} \right)^2 \right. \right. \\ & \left. \left. + \left( \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\pm} \frac{a_{2\pm} \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}} \right)^2 \right\} + \frac{1}{\delta E_2} \left\{ \left( \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\pm} \frac{\mathcal{S}_{\pm}^+ \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\pm} \frac{\mathcal{D}_{\pm}^+ \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}} \right)^2 \right\} \right. \\ & \left. - \sum_{\pm} \frac{1}{\delta E_{\pm}} \frac{1}{2} \left\{ (\mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-)^2 + (\mathcal{D}_{\pm}^-)^2 \right\} \sum_{\pm} \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \left( \frac{\mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{\mathcal{D}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}} \right)^2 \right\} \right] \quad (2.11.40) \end{aligned}$$

If we define some quantities:  $F_{(1,2)} = \sum_{\pm} \frac{a_{(1,2)\pm} \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}}$ ,  $G_{(1,2)} = \sum_{\pm} \frac{a_{(1,2)\pm} \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}}$ ,  $P = \sum_{\pm} \frac{\mathcal{S}_{\pm}^+ \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}}$ ,  $Q = \sum_{\pm} \frac{\mathcal{D}_{\pm}^+ \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^-}{\delta E_{\pm}}$ ,  $X_n = \sum_{\pm} \frac{(\mathcal{S}_{\pm}^-)^2}{(\delta E_{\pm})^n}$ ,  $Y_n = \sum_{\pm} \frac{(\mathcal{D}_{\pm}^-)^2}{(\delta E_{\pm})^n}$ , the total renormalisation from second and fourth order can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} & -(|\Phi\rangle_0 \langle \Phi|_0 + |\Phi\rangle_3 \langle \Phi|_3) 4t^4 \left[ \frac{1}{2t^2} X_1 + \left( \frac{1}{\delta E_{CS}} + \frac{2}{\delta E_{00}} \right) F_2^2 + \frac{1}{\delta E_2} P^2 - X_1 X_2 \right] \\ & -(|\Phi\rangle_1 \langle \Phi|_1 + |\Phi\rangle_2 \langle \Phi|_2) t^4 \left[ \frac{1}{t^2} (X_1 + Y_1) + \left( \frac{1}{\delta E_{ST}} + \frac{2}{\delta E_{\uparrow\uparrow}} \right) (F_1^2 + G_1^2) + \frac{1}{\delta E_{CS}} (F_2^2 + G_2^2) \right. \\ & \left. + \frac{1}{\delta E_2} (P^2 + Q^2) - (X_1 + Y_1) (X_2 + Y_2) \right] \quad (2.11.41) \end{aligned}$$

The excitation energies are given by

$$\delta E_{CS} = \delta E_{00} = \frac{3J}{8} + \frac{U}{4} + \alpha, \quad \delta E_{\uparrow\uparrow} = \delta E_{ST} = -\frac{U}{4} + \frac{5J}{8} + \alpha, \quad \delta E_2 = 2\alpha, \quad \delta E_{\pm} = \frac{3J}{8} + \alpha \pm \frac{1}{2} \Delta, \quad \alpha \equiv \sqrt{V^2 \gamma^2 + 4V^2} \quad (2.11.42)$$

where  $V\gamma = \frac{3J}{8} + \frac{U}{4}$  and  $\Delta = \sqrt{\frac{U^2}{4} + 4V^2}$ . The effective Hamiltonian can be expressed in the general form

$$H_{\text{eff}} = |\Psi\rangle_1 \langle\Psi|_1 \otimes \left[ \text{constant} + \alpha_{\text{spin}} \hat{\mathcal{P}}_{\text{spin}} + \alpha_{\text{charge}} \hat{\mathcal{P}}_{\text{charge}} \right] \quad (2.11.43)$$

$\hat{\mathcal{P}}_{\text{charge}}$  and  $\hat{\mathcal{P}}_{\text{spin}}$  are projection operators for, respectively, the charge ( $\hat{n}_1 \neq 1$ ) and spin ( $\hat{n}_1 = 1$ ) sectors of the first site. Since  $\hat{\mathcal{P}}_{\text{charge}} + \hat{\mathcal{P}}_{\text{spin}} = 1$ , we can eliminate one of the terms and rewrite the effective Hamiltonian in the simpler form

$$H_{\text{eff}} = |\Psi\rangle_1 \langle\Psi|_1 \otimes \left[ \text{constant} + \mathcal{F} \hat{\mathcal{P}}_{\text{charge}} \right] \quad (2.11.44)$$

where  $\mathcal{F} \equiv \alpha_{\text{charge}} - \alpha_{\text{spin}}$  is the net energy of the charge sector above the spin sector.

We will now look at the extreme strong coupling regime  $J \gg V \gg U, t$ . There, all the expressions simplify:

$$\begin{aligned} V\gamma &\simeq \frac{3J}{8}, \quad \Delta \simeq 2V, \quad \alpha \simeq \frac{3J}{8}, \quad c_s^+ = -c_c^- \simeq 0, \quad c_s^- = c_c^+ \simeq 1, \quad \mathcal{N}_{\pm} \simeq 4\sqrt{2}V, \quad a_{1,\pm} \simeq \frac{1}{2}, \quad a_{2,\pm} \simeq \pm \frac{1}{2}, \\ \delta E_{\pm} &= \delta E_{\text{CS}} = \delta E_{00} = \delta E_2 \simeq \frac{3J}{4}, \quad \delta E_{\text{ST}} = \delta E_{\uparrow\uparrow} \simeq J, \quad \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^- = \mathcal{D}_{\pm}^- \simeq \frac{1}{2}, \quad \mathcal{S}_{\pm}^+ = -\mathcal{D}_{\pm}^+ \simeq \pm \frac{1}{2}, \\ F_1 &= G_1 \simeq \frac{2}{3J}, \quad F_2 = G_2 \simeq 0, \quad P = Q \simeq 0, \quad X_1 = Y_1 \simeq \frac{2}{3J}, \quad X_2 = Y_2 \simeq \frac{8}{9J^2} \end{aligned} \quad (2.11.45)$$

The effective Hamiltonian becomes

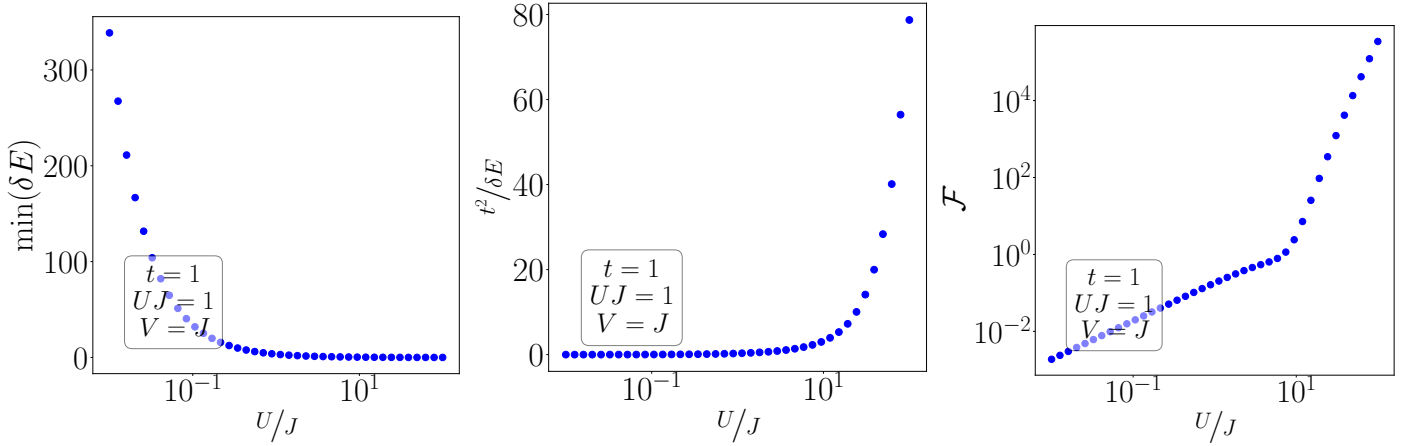
$$\begin{aligned} & - \left( |\Phi\rangle_0 \langle\Phi|_0 + |\Phi\rangle_3 \langle\Phi|_3 \right) \frac{4t^2}{3J} \left[ 1 - \frac{16t^2}{9J^3} \right] - \left( |\Phi\rangle_1 \langle\Phi|_1 + |\Phi\rangle_2 \langle\Phi|_2 \right) \frac{4t^2}{3J} \left[ 1 + \frac{2t^2}{9J^2} \right] \\ &= - \frac{4t^2}{3J} \sum_i |\Phi\rangle_i \langle\Phi|_i + \left( |\Phi\rangle_0 \langle\Phi|_0 + |\Phi\rangle_3 \langle\Phi|_3 \right) \frac{64t^4}{27J^3} - \left( |\Phi\rangle_1 \langle\Phi|_1 + |\Phi\rangle_2 \langle\Phi|_2 \right) \frac{8t^4}{27J^3} \\ &= |\Psi\rangle_1 \langle\Psi|_1 \left[ \text{constant} + \frac{64t^4}{27J^3} \mathcal{P}_{\text{charge}} - \frac{8t^4}{27J^3} \mathcal{P}_{\text{spin}} \right] \end{aligned} \quad (2.11.46)$$

$\mathcal{P}_{\text{spin}}$  and  $\mathcal{P}_{\text{charge}}$  project, respectively, onto the spin and charge sectors of the first site. The fact that the charge sector comes with a positive factor means that the holon-doublon states are repulsive, and this renormalisation of the states generates an effective particle-hole symmetric Fermi liquid interaction on the first site - also known as the local Fermi liquid (LFL) [20].

## 2.12 Destruction of the Abrikosov-Suhl resonance: passage from strong coupling to local moment

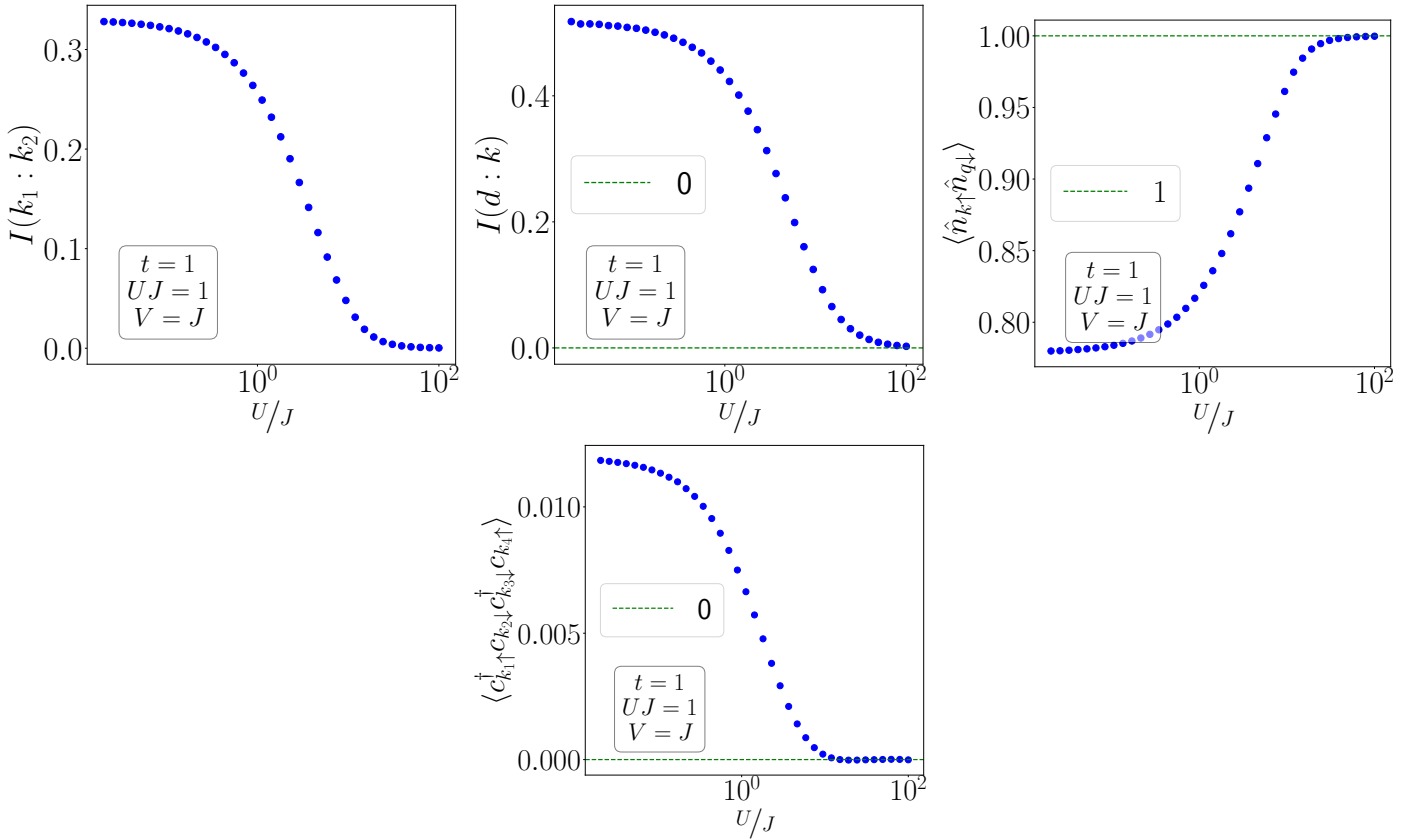
We will now tune the parameters of the fixed point Hamiltonian and study the variation of quantities related to the effective Hamiltonian like the local FL strength  $\mathcal{F}$ , the gap in the spectrum of the zeroth Hamiltonian  $H_0^*$  and the value of the small parameter  $t^2/\delta E$ , as well as various measures of entanglement like entanglement entropy, mutual information and spin-spin correlations between various sets of members of the real-space impurity+lattice construction. We will trace a specific path through the space of values of fixed point couplings: we will start from the strong coupling regime  $U \ll J, V$  and go towards the local moment regime  $U \gg J, V$ . The context of this study is that the technique of dynamical mean-field theory (DMFT) obtains a metal-insulator transition in the 2D Hubbard model by studying the Anderson impurity model as the auxiliary system for the Hubbard; there, the local moment regime of the impurity corresponds to the insulator in the bulk. Our goal here is to study what precisely happens in the effective Hamiltonian in the journey from the metal to the insulator, and draw a concrete connection between this modification of the effective Hamiltonian, and the simultaneous change of the impurity spectral function in fig. 2.10. This is done with the knowledge that the local moment phase of the generalised SIAM is never RG-stable.

### Perturbation theory parameters



The vanishing of the gap and the growth of the small parameter indicates the breakdown of perturbation theory around the singlet; this simply shows that there is a degeneracy in the local moment regime, and the effective Hamiltonian will have to be obtained using degenerate perturbation theory. The presence of degeneracy also suggests that the effective Hamiltonian will be of the non-Fermi liquid type.

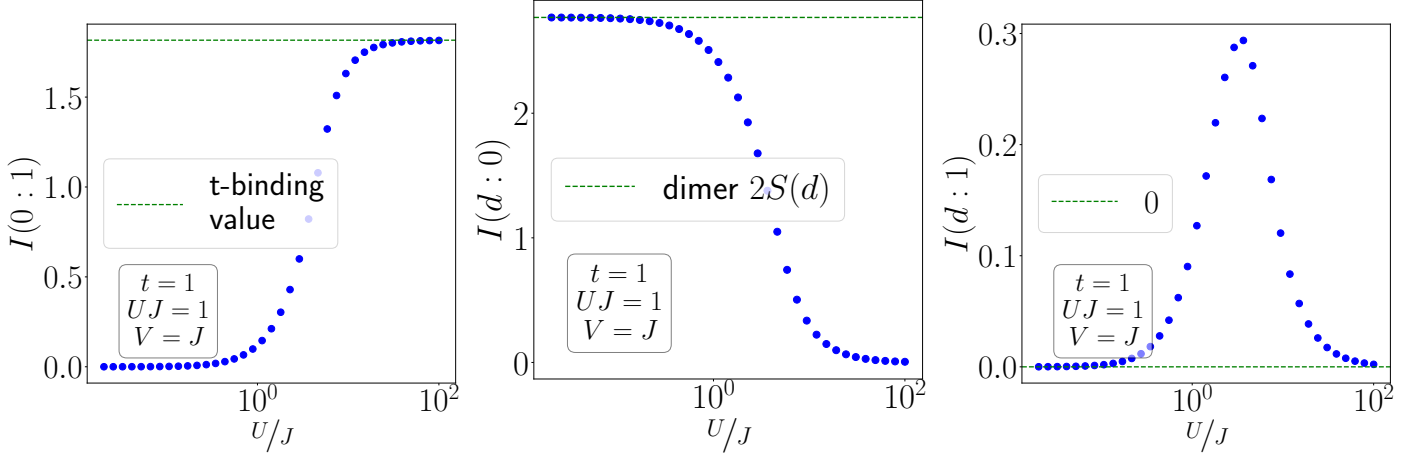
### $k$ -space correlations within the Kondo cloud



The mutual information  $I(d : k)$  between the impurity and the cloud vanishes as  $U/J$  is increased. This is a signature of the loss of entanglement and the breakdown of the singlet. The reduction of the mutual information within the cloud,  $I(k_1 : k_2)$ , shows that the Kondo cloud is being killed as  $U/J$  is increased; it ultimately drops to zero, characteristic of a decoupled tight-binding chain. The four-Fermion off-diagonal term also vanishes as  $U/J$  increases and this is again a

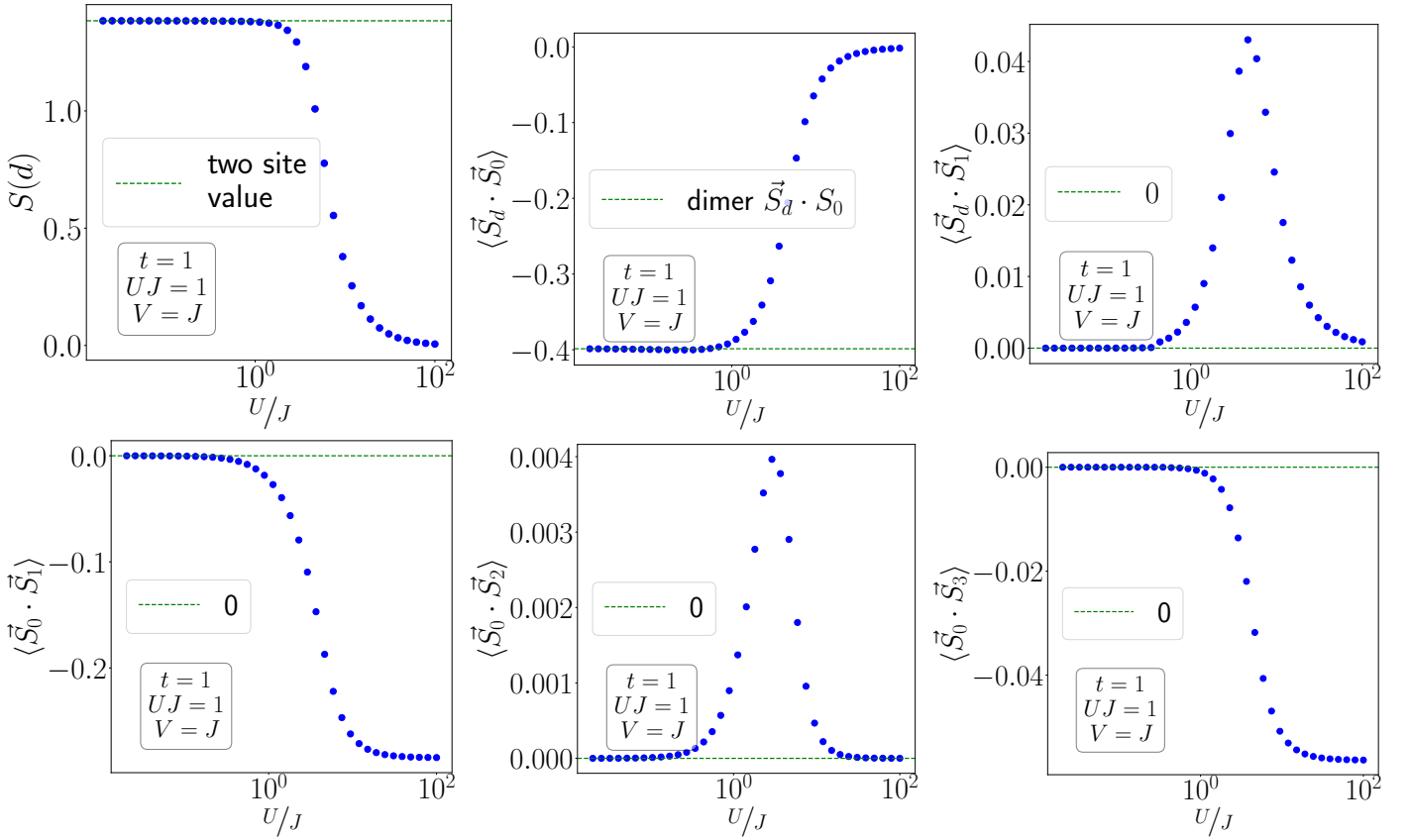
signature of the reduction in the spin-flip processes. The diagonal correlation  $\langle \hat{n}_{k\uparrow} \hat{n}_{q\downarrow} \rangle$  increasing to 1 shows the formation of a filled Fermi sea.

### Mutual information between various real space members



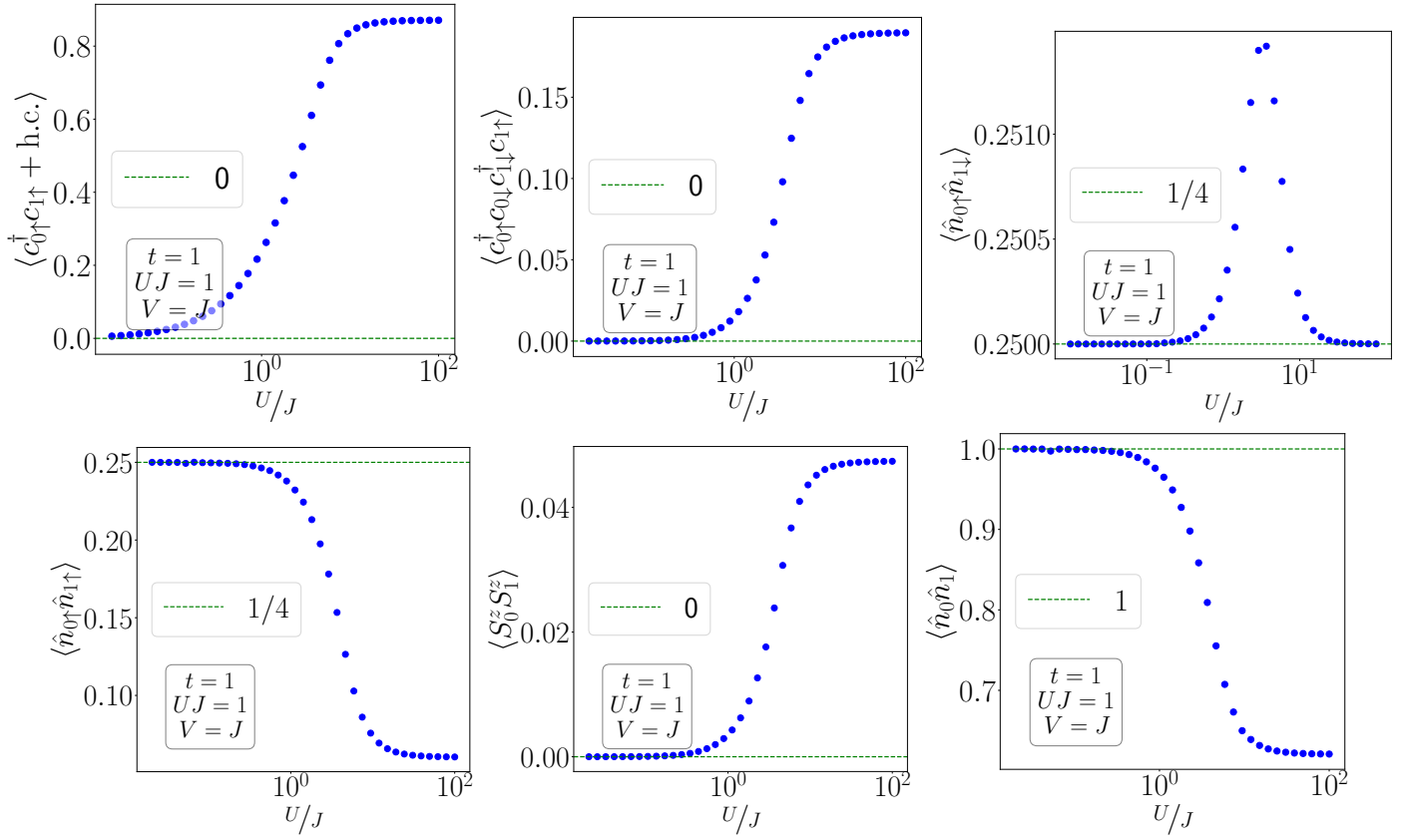
The impurity-zeroth site mutual information  $I(d:0)$  remains unchanged at the maximum for an appreciable range of values, and this shows the stability of the singlet. Meanwhile, the mutual information between the zeroth site and the site nearest to it ( $I(0:1)$ ) grows, because when the singlet weakens, the zeroth site is able to entangle more with the other sites. It finally saturates to its maximum value, which is the value produced as result of the tight-binding hopping. The mutual information between the impurity and sites beyond the zeroth site ( $I(d:1)$ ) show a non-monotonic behaviour; it first increases as the entanglement that was initially restricted to just the impurity and the zeroth sites begins "seeping" into the other sites as well. Beyond a critical value of  $U/J$ ,  $I(d:1)$  starts dropping, because the entanglement has now mostly shifted out of the singlet and into the conduction bath.

## Impurity entanglement entropy and spin-spin correlations



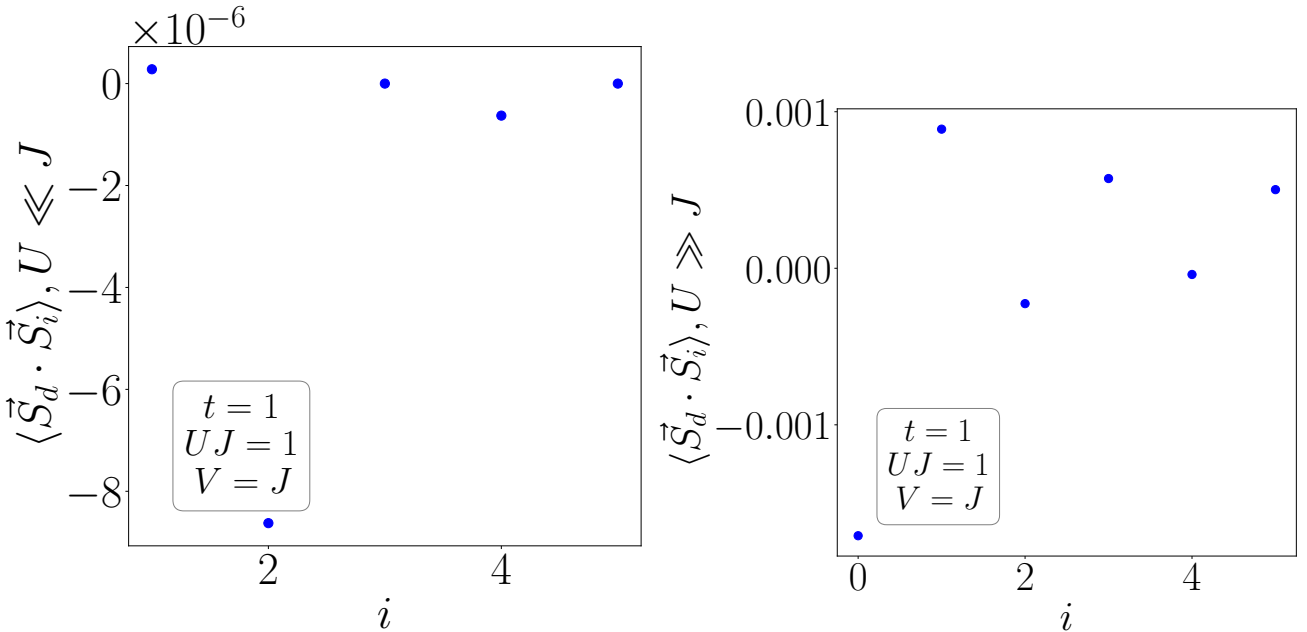
The von-Neumann entanglement entropy  $S(d)$  of the impurity shows pretty straightforward behaviour. It is maximum for  $U \ll J$  because it is in a singlet configuration. For  $U \gg J$ , the singlet weakens and the impurity begins to decouple from the bath, leading to a reduction in  $S(d)$ . At sufficiently low values of  $J/U$ , the impurity decouples from the zeroth site and the total system can be factorised into a local moment in product with a tight-binding chain, so that the impurity site will now have zero entanglement entropy. The spin-spin correlation  $\vec{S}_d \cdot \vec{S}_0$  is most negative at large  $J$ , showing maximum screening at strong-coupling. It decreases to 0 as the singlet breaks. This reduction in the spin-spin correlation between the impurity and the zeroth site is accompanied by the appearance of antiferromagnetic spin-spin correlation  $\vec{S}_0 \cdot \vec{S}_1$ ,  $\vec{S}_0 \cdot \vec{S}_3$  between the zeroth site and odd-numbered sites like 1 and 3. This can be understood on the following grounds: since the tight-binding hopping only connects same spin states, an electron on the first site has to have spin opposite to that on the zeroth site in order to hop onto that site. This requirement of opposite spin is what induces an antiferromagnetic superexchange interaction  $J_1$  between the zeroth site and the first site. This interaction strength increases as  $J$  is decreased, because  $J_1 \sim t^2/J$ . By the same argument, a ferromagnetic superexchange interaction is induced between the impurity site and the first site, as well as between the zeroth site and the other even-numbered sites. These are also seen in the plots.

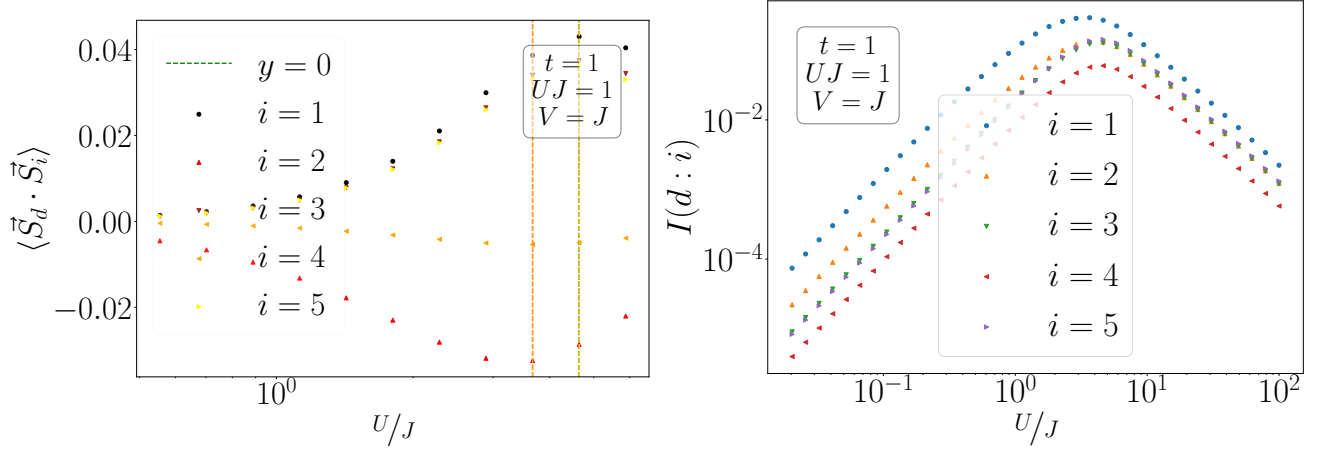
## Real-space correlations



The increase of single-particle hopping correlation is another signature of the "handover" of entanglement from the singlet to the tight-binding chain. Exactly the same can be said for the four-Fermion interaction as well.

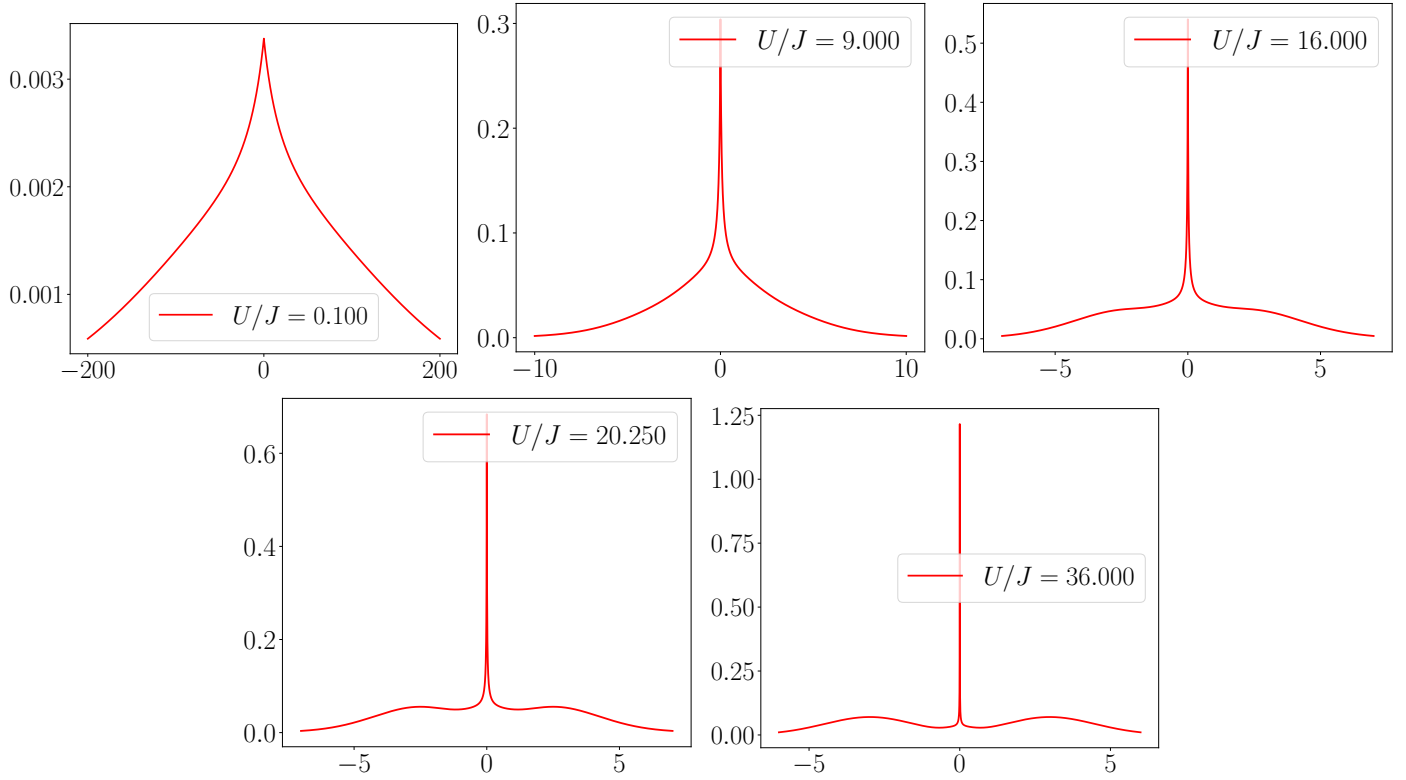
## Real-space correlations as function of distance





The first thing to note in the first two figures is the difference in the order of magnitudes; the correlations are very small in the first figure, because the impurity is being screened almost completely by the zeroth site at  $J \gg U$ . This changes in the second figure where, because  $U \gg J$ , the singlet has become entangled with the other sites, and the impurity is being screened by multiple sites. The mutual information all vary similarly with distance in the bottom right figure.

### Impurity spectral function



## 2.13 Calculating the $T = 0$ Wilson ratio from low energy excitations

The total system now consists of two decoupled parts - the singlet composed of the impurity and the zeroth site, and the remaining lattice composed of  $N-1$  sites with a tight-binding dispersion and a local interaction at the 1-th site. The effective

Hamiltonian for the remaining lattice is

$$\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \sum_{\sigma} t \left( c_{i\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{i+1\sigma} + c_{i+1\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{i\sigma} \right) + u \hat{n}_{1\uparrow} \hat{n}_{1\downarrow} \quad (2.13.1)$$

We have rewritten the holon term in terms of the spin and doublon operators. We will now invoke the mean-field approximation

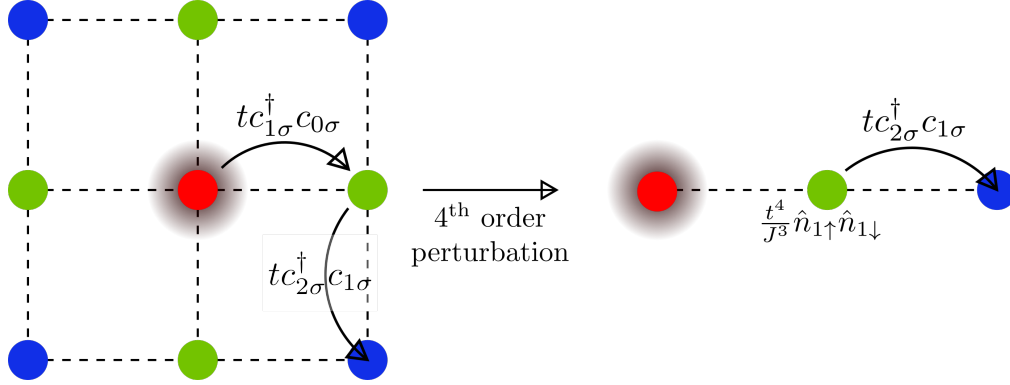


Figure 2.11: *Left:* The nearest-neighbor hopping described by the effective Hamiltonian. The red circle is the impurity. The black cloud at the center demarcates the collection of electrons at the origin of the lattice (which couple to the impurity). The green circles represent lattice sites that are nearest to the origin. The blue circles represent next-nearest sites. *Right:* After treating the hopping between origin and its nearest neighbors as perturbation, we get a system consisting of two decoupled parts: one part is the impurity+cloud singlet, the other part is the rest of the lattice sites. The effect of the hopping between the origin and the green sites is a repulsion term on the green sites.

in simplifying this term. We will be dealing with thermodynamic quantities soon, so the operators will be replaced by their thermodynamic values, that is, the values that minimize the free energy functional.

$$\hat{n}_{1\uparrow} \hat{n}_{1\downarrow} \rightarrow \langle \hat{n}_{1\uparrow} \hat{n}_{1\downarrow} \rangle = \langle \delta n_{1\uparrow} \delta n_{1\downarrow} \rangle + \langle n_{1\uparrow} \rangle \langle n_{1\downarrow} \rangle \quad (2.13.2)$$

where  $\delta n_{1\sigma} \equiv n_{1\sigma} - \langle n_{1\sigma} \rangle$  is the fluctuation of the particle number above the ground state. The mean-field approximation then involves dropping the first term which is a quadratic fluctuation - since we are interested in values of quantities at  $T \rightarrow 0$ , this quadratic fluctuation is very small. The interaction we are left with is

$$u \langle n_{1\uparrow} \rangle \langle n_{1\downarrow} \rangle = \sum_{kq\sigma} f_{kq} \langle n_{k\sigma} \rangle \langle n_{q\bar{\sigma}} \rangle \quad (2.13.3)$$

This interaction converts the problem to that of a Landau Fermi liquid, with the quasiparticle energy functional being given by

$$\epsilon_{k\sigma} = \epsilon_k + \sum_q f_{kq} \langle \hat{n}_{q\bar{\sigma}} \rangle \quad (2.13.4)$$

From the form of the quasiparticle energy functional, we can see that there is no spin-parallel term, so we can write

$$f_{kk'\sigma\sigma} = 0, f_{kk'\sigma\bar{\sigma}} = f_{kk'} \quad (2.13.5)$$

We will now use this Fermi liquid form to extract the Wilson ratio. We will make use of the following definitions/results:

$$dn_{k\sigma} = \frac{\partial n}{\partial \epsilon_{k\sigma}} (d\epsilon_{k\sigma} - d\mu) \quad [\text{follows from differentiating FD distribution}] \quad (2.13.6)$$

$$C_V = \frac{d\epsilon}{dT}, \quad \chi^{s,c} = \frac{d}{d(B, \mu)} (n_{\uparrow} \mp n_{\downarrow}), \quad 2f_0^{s,a} = \sum_k (f_{kk'\uparrow\uparrow} \pm f_{kk'\uparrow\downarrow}), \quad F_0^{s,a} = \rho(0) f_0^{s,a} \quad (2.13.7)$$



### 2.13.1 Low- $T$ Specific heat

$$\begin{aligned}
C &= \frac{d}{dT} \sum_{k\sigma} \epsilon_{k\sigma} n_{k\sigma} \\
&\approx \sum_{k\sigma} \epsilon_{k\sigma}^0 \frac{dn_{k\sigma}}{dT} \quad [\text{no quasiparticles at ground state}] \\
&\approx \sum_{k\sigma} \epsilon_{k\sigma}^0 \frac{dn_{k\sigma}}{dT} \quad [\text{same expression as Fermi gas but with modified distribution function}] \\
&= \rho(0)T
\end{aligned} \tag{2.13.8}$$

where  $\rho$  is the total quasiparticle DOS with contributions from conduction bath and impurity.

$$\rho \sim \text{Im Trace } [G] = \text{Im} \sum_{d\sigma} G_{dd}^\sigma + \text{Im} \sum_{k\sigma} G_{kk}^\sigma = \rho_0 + \rho_{\text{imp}} \tag{2.13.9}$$

which gives

$$C_{\text{imp}} \equiv C - C_0 = \rho_{\text{imp}}(0)T \tag{2.13.10}$$

### 2.13.2 Low- $T$ Charge Susceptibility

$$\chi^c = \frac{dN}{d\mu} \tag{2.13.11}$$

Due to change in chemical potential,  $\delta\epsilon_{k\sigma}$  is isotropic and SU(2)-symmetric. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
d\epsilon_{k\sigma} &= \sum_{k'\sigma'} f_{kk'\sigma\sigma'} dn_{k'\sigma'} \\
&= dn \sum_{k'} (f_{kk'\uparrow\uparrow} + f_{kk'\uparrow\downarrow}) \quad [dn = dn_{k'\uparrow} = dn_{k'\downarrow}] \\
&= 2dnf_0^s
\end{aligned} \tag{2.13.12}$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}
dN &= \sum_{k\sigma} dn_{k\sigma} = \sum_{k\sigma} \frac{\partial n}{\partial \epsilon_{k\sigma}} (d\epsilon_{k\sigma} - d\mu) = \sum_{k\sigma} -\frac{1}{2} \rho (2dnf_0^s - d\mu) = -\rho(0)dnf_0^s + d\mu\rho(0) \\
&\approx d\mu\rho(0) - \rho(0)f_0^s d\mu\rho(0) \quad [\text{substitute } dN \text{ back into itself}] \\
\Rightarrow \frac{dN}{d\mu} &= \rho(0) (1 - \rho(0)f_0^s) \Rightarrow \chi_{\text{imp}}^c = \rho(0)_{\text{imp}} - \rho(0)f_0^s
\end{aligned} \tag{2.13.13}$$

At an intermediate state, we substituted  $dN$  back into itself and kept only the leading order term. This is justified because  $f_{kk'}$  goes as  $\frac{1}{NJ}$ . At the fixed point and for a thermodynamically large system, both  $J$  and  $N$  are very large, so keeping only the leading order suffices.

From a previous calculation, we know that the charge susceptibility at  $T = 0$  is zero (eq. (2.7.9)), so we can write down the following relation:

$$f_0^s = \frac{\rho(0)_{\text{imp}}}{\rho(0)} \tag{2.13.14}$$

### 2.13.3 Low- $T$ Spin Susceptibility

$$\chi^s = \frac{dm}{d\mu} \tag{2.13.15}$$

Due to change in magnetic field, change in  $\epsilon_{k\sigma}$  should be isotropic and SU(2)-antisymmetric. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
 d\epsilon_{k\sigma} &= -\frac{1}{2}dB\sigma + \sum_{k'\sigma'} f_{kk'\sigma\sigma'} dn_{k'\sigma'} \\
 &= -\frac{1}{2}dB\sigma + dn_\sigma \sum_{k'} \left( f_{kk'\uparrow\uparrow} - f_{kk'\uparrow\downarrow} \right) \quad [dn_{k'\uparrow} = -dn_{k'\downarrow}] \\
 &= -\frac{1}{2}dB\sigma + 2dn_\sigma f_0^a
 \end{aligned} \tag{2.13.16}$$

Since the total number remains constant,  $\mu = 0$ . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}
 dm &= \sum_k (dn_{k\uparrow} - dn_{k\downarrow}) = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_k \rho (d\epsilon_{k\uparrow} - d\epsilon_{k\downarrow}) = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_k \rho \left( -dB + 2f_0^a (dn_{k\uparrow} - dn_{k\downarrow}) \right) \\
 &= dB\rho(0) - dm\rho(0)f_0^a \approx dB\rho(0) - \rho(0)f_0^a B\rho(0) \quad [\text{substitute } dm \text{ back into itself}] \\
 \Rightarrow \frac{dm}{dB} &= \rho(0) (1 - \rho(0)f_0^a) \Rightarrow \chi_{imp}^s = \rho(0)_{imp} - \rho(0)f_0^a
 \end{aligned} \tag{2.13.17}$$

### 2.13.4 Wilson ratio

The Wilson ratio for the impurity is defined as

$$R = \frac{\chi_{imp}^s}{\frac{C_{imp}}{T}} \tag{2.13.18}$$

From eq. (2.13.5), we have  $f_0^s = -f_0^a$ , which, when combined with eq. (2.13.14), gives

$$\chi_{imp}^s = 2\rho(0)_{imp} \tag{2.13.19}$$

The Wilson ratio becomes

$$R = \frac{2\rho(0)_{imp}}{\rho(0)_{imp}} = 2 \tag{2.13.20}$$

## 2.14 Luttinger's and Friedel's sum rules

The subsequent discussions are for the first quadrant where  $U^* = 0$  and  $J^* > K^*$ . At high temperatures, we see that the impurity susceptibility attains the value of

$$\frac{1}{8k_B T} \tag{2.14.1}$$

which implies that the impurity behaves as a free orbital in this limit, having no coupling with the bath. We can write down the following effective Hamiltonian for such a limit:

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{high-T}} = \tilde{\epsilon}_d \hat{n}_d + \sum_{k\sigma} \epsilon_k \hat{n}_{k\sigma} \tag{2.14.2}$$

Since the impurity is decoupled from the bath, we can immediately write down the Hamiltonian just for the impurity:

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{high-T, imp}} = \tilde{\epsilon}_d \hat{n}_d \tag{2.14.3}$$

We consider the resonant-level model:

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{res}} = \sum_{k\sigma} \epsilon_k \hat{n}_{k\sigma} + \epsilon_d \hat{n}_d + \sum_{k\sigma} \left( V_k c_{k\sigma}^\dagger c_{d\sigma} + \text{h.c.} \right) \tag{2.14.4}$$

The total Green's function is

$$G(z) = \frac{1}{z - \mathcal{H}_{\text{res}}} \tag{2.14.5}$$

The impurity diagonal Green's function is

$$G_{dd}(z) = \frac{1}{z - \epsilon_d - \Sigma_d(z)}, \quad G_d(z) = G_{dd} |d\rangle \langle d| \quad (2.14.6)$$

where  $\Sigma_d(z)$  is in general complex and is zero at the free orbital fixed point. The conduction electron Green's function is

$$G_{kk}(z) = G_k^0(z) + \left[ G_k^0(z) V_k \right]^2 G_{dd}(z), \quad G_c(z) \equiv \sum_k |k\rangle \langle k| G_{kk}(z), \quad G_{c0}(z) \equiv \sum_k G_k^0(z) |k\rangle \langle k| \quad (2.14.7)$$

The total Green's function can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} G(z) &= \left( \sum_k |k\rangle \langle k| + |d\rangle \langle d| \right) G \left( \sum_k |k\rangle \langle k| + |d\rangle \langle d| \right) \\ &= \sum_k |k\rangle \langle k| G_{kk}(z) + G_{dd}(z) |d\rangle \langle d| + \text{off-diagonal terms} \\ &= G_c(z) + G_d(z) + \text{off-diagonal terms} \end{aligned} \quad (2.14.8)$$

The total number of electrons is given by

$$\begin{aligned} N &= \oint \frac{dz}{2\pi i} n_F(z) \text{Tr} [G(z)] \\ &= \oint \frac{dz}{2\pi i} n_F(z) \text{Tr} [G_d(z) + G_c(z)] \end{aligned} \quad (2.14.9)$$

The contour  $\Gamma$  counts all the singularities of  $\text{Tr}G(z)$ , and thus encloses only the real axis of the complex plane (since  $G(z)$  comes from a Hermitian matrix  $\mathcal{H}_{\text{res}}$ , all its singularities are real). At this point, we can use an identity:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Tr} [G_d(z)] &= \text{Tr} \left[ \frac{|d\rangle \langle d|}{z - \epsilon_d - \Sigma_d(z)} \right] = \text{Tr} \left[ \frac{|d\rangle \langle d|}{z - \epsilon_d - \Sigma_d(z)} \frac{\partial(z - \epsilon_d)}{\partial z} \right] = \text{Tr} \left[ |d\rangle \langle d| G_{dd} \frac{\partial \{ G_{dd}^{-1}(z) + \Sigma_d(z) \}}{\partial z} \right] \\ &= \text{Tr} \left[ G_d(z) \frac{\partial G_d^{-1}(z)}{\partial z} \right] + \text{Tr} \left[ G_d(z) \frac{\partial \Sigma_d(z)}{\partial z} \right] = \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left[ \ln \text{Det} G_d^{-1}(z) \right] + \text{Tr} \left[ G_d(z) \frac{\partial \Sigma_d(z)}{\partial z} \right] \end{aligned} \quad (2.14.10)$$

In the last step, we converted the trace to a determinant using

$$\text{Tr} \left[ A \frac{\partial A^{-1}}{\partial z} \right] = \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \text{Tr} \ln A^{-1} = \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \sum_i \ln \lambda_i = \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \ln \prod_i \lambda_i = \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \ln \text{Det} A^{-1} \quad (2.14.11)$$

where  $\lambda_i$  are the eigenvalues of  $A^{-1}$ . Substituting  $\text{Tr} [G_d(z)]$  into the total number of particles gives

$$N = \oint \frac{dz}{2\pi i} n_F(z) \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \ln \text{Det} \{ G_d^{-1}(z) \} + \text{Tr} \left( G_d(z) \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \Sigma_d(z) \right) + \text{Tr} G_c(z) \right] \quad (2.14.12)$$

The conduction electron part can also be simplified:

$$\text{Tr} G_c(z) = \text{Tr} \left[ G_{c0}(z) + \sum_k \left\{ G_k^0(z) V_k \right\}^2 G_{dd}(z) |k\rangle \langle k| \right] = \text{Tr} [G_{c0}(z)] + \sum_k \left[ G_k^0(z) V_k \right]^2 G_{dd}(z) \quad (2.14.13)$$

Since  $G_{c0}^{-1}(z) = z - \sum_k \epsilon_k \hat{n}_k$ , we can write  $\text{Tr} [G_{c0}(z)] = \text{Tr} \left[ G_{c0}(z) \frac{\partial}{\partial z} G_{c0}^{-1} \right]$  and hence

$$\text{Tr} G_c(z) = \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left[ \ln \text{Det} G_{c0}^{-1}(z) \right] + \sum_k \left[ G_k^0(z) V_k \right]^2 G_{dd}(z) \quad (2.14.14)$$

Updating the total particles with this leads to

$$N = \oint \frac{dz}{2\pi i} n_F(z) \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \ln \text{Det} \{ G_d^{-1}(z) \} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \ln \text{Det} \{ G_{c0}^{-1}(z) \} + \text{Tr} \left( G_d(z) \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \Sigma_d(z) \right) + \sum_k \left( V_k G_k^0 \right)^2 G_{dd}(z) \right] \quad (2.14.15)$$

For the resonant-level model, we have

$$\Sigma_d = \sum_k V_k^2 G_k^0 = \sum_k \frac{V_k^2}{z - \epsilon_k} \quad (2.14.16)$$

such that

$$\text{Tr} \left( G_d(z) \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \Sigma_d(z) \right) = -G_{dd}(z) \sum_k \left( V_k G_k^0 \right)^2 \quad (2.14.17)$$

which allows us to write

$$N = \oint \frac{dz}{2\pi i} n_F(z) \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \ln \text{Det} \{ G_d^{-1}(z) \} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \ln \text{Det} \{ G_{c0}^{-1}(z) \} \right] \quad (2.14.18)$$

At  $T = 0$ ,  $n_F$  is defined as 1 below the FS,  $\frac{1}{2}$  at the FS and 0 above it.

$$N = \left[ \oint_{\Gamma_<} + \frac{1}{2} \oint_{\Gamma_0} \right] \frac{dz}{2\pi i} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \ln \text{Det} \{ G_d^{-1}(z) \} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \ln \text{Det} \{ G_{c0}^{-1}(z) \} \right] \quad (2.14.19)$$

Following Seki and Yunoki, we can define a winding number for a Green's function  $G(z)$ :

$$n_{\text{Det } G^{-1}(C)} = \oint_C \frac{dz}{2\pi i} \frac{\partial \ln \text{Det } G^{-1}(z)}{\partial z} = \oint_{\text{Det } G^{-1}(C)} \frac{d \text{Det } G^{-1}}{\text{Det } G^{-1}} \quad (2.14.20)$$

Since  $n_{\text{Det } G^{-1}(C)}$  counts the number of times the curve  $\text{Det } G^{-1}(C)$  winds around the origin, it is integer-valued and topological. Seki and Yunoki also show that this number is given by

$$n_{\text{Det } G^{-1}(C)} = P_{\text{Det } G}(C) - Z_{\text{Det } G}(C) \quad (2.14.21)$$

where  $P_{f(z)}(C)$  is the number of poles of  $f(z)$  enclosed by the contour  $C$ , and  $Z$  is the corresponding number of zeros. The total number of particles in the resonant level model can thus be written as

$$N = P_{\text{Det } G_d}(\Gamma_<) - Z_{\text{Det } G_d}(\Gamma_<) + \frac{1}{2} \left[ P_{\text{Det } G_d}(\Gamma_0) - Z_{\text{Det } G_d}(\Gamma_0) \right] + P_{\text{Det } G_{c0}}(\Gamma_<) - Z_{\text{Det } G_{c0}}(\Gamma_<) + \frac{1}{2} \left[ P_{\text{Det } G_{c0}}(\Gamma_0) - Z_{\text{Det } G_{c0}}(\Gamma_0) \right] \quad (2.14.22)$$

The average number of particles can thus be expressed purely in terms of the number of poles and zeros of the impurity and the conduction electron Green's functions. As shown by Seki and Yunoki, the second line gives the Luttinger volume  $V_L$ :

$$N = P_{\text{Det } G_d}(\Gamma_<) - Z_{\text{Det } G_d}(\Gamma_<) + \frac{1}{2} \left[ P_{\text{Det } G_d}(\Gamma_0) - Z_{\text{Det } G_d}(\Gamma_0) \right] + V_L \quad (2.14.23)$$

If we start from a non-interacting model ( $V_k = 0$ ), we can write

$$N = \mathcal{N}_{imp}^0 + V_L^0 \quad (2.14.24)$$

where  $\mathcal{N}_{imp}^0$  is simply the number of singularities of  $G_d$  on the real axis, for the non-interacting case. We now turn up the interaction  $V_k$ , keeping the total number of particles conserved at  $N$ . With a non-zero  $V_k$ , the impurity self-energy can be written (assuming a constant density of states) as

$$\Sigma_d(z) = \Sigma_d^{\text{real}}(z) - i\Delta \quad (2.14.25)$$

so that the impurity Greens function becomes

$$G_d(z) = \frac{1}{z - \epsilon_d - \Sigma_d^{\text{real}}(z) + i\Delta} \quad (2.14.26)$$

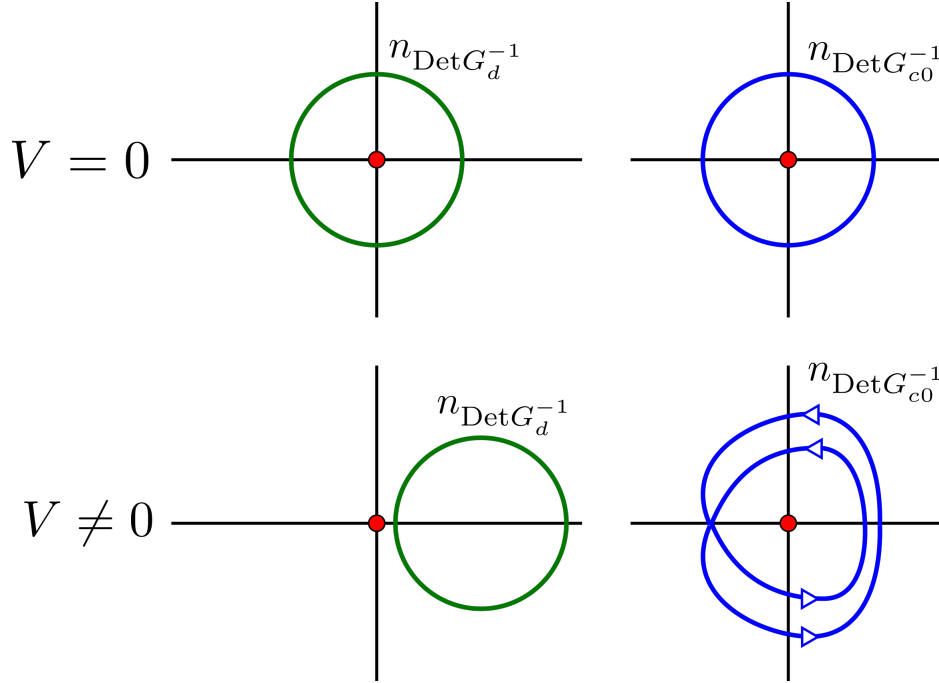
We can see that the presence of an imaginary part lifts the pole of  $G_d(z)$  off the real axis, and since the contour  $\Gamma_0$  encloses only the real axis, this will count as a loss in the number of poles of  $G_d(z)$ . Also, if we specialize to the case where the renormalized impurity site energy  $\epsilon_d^* = \epsilon_d + \Sigma_d^{\text{real}} = 0$ , this loss will happen at the Fermi surface, and will hence be multiplied by a factor of half. We can therefore write

$$N = \mathcal{N}_{\text{imp}} + V_L = \mathcal{N}_{\text{imp}}^0 - \frac{1}{2} + V_L \implies V_L = V_L^0 + \frac{1}{2} \quad (2.14.27)$$

If we take into account the spin-degeneracy and redefine  $V_L$  to mean the Luttinger volume for both momentum and spin degrees of freedom, we get

$$V_L = V_L^0 + 1 \quad (2.14.28)$$

This is a specific case of the more general result for Kondo lattices obtained by Oshikawa using flux-insertion arguments in



[21]. One can now ask what happens to this result once we also incorporate the spin-exchange interaction  $J\vec{S}_d \cdot \vec{s}_i$  we can expect that it will complicate the self-energy of the impurity. It cannot, however, preclude the loss of the real pole, nor can it create a new singularity - to do so would require the self-energy to diverge, and we are working with finite systems here. This suggests that the eq. (2.14.28) would still hold.

We have also not accounted for the RG flow from the local moment fixed point to the strong coupling fixed point. The local moment fixed point is characterized by a decoupled quantum top:

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{LM}} = \epsilon_d \hat{n}_d + U \hat{n}_{d\uparrow} \hat{n}_{d\downarrow} \quad (2.14.29)$$

It can be shown that the single-particle Green's function for this effective Hamiltonian is similar to the one at the free-orbital fixed point. We will use the equation of motion technique to solve for the Green's function. The time-domain retarded Green's function is defined as

$$G_{d\sigma}(t, t') = -i\theta(t - t') \left\langle \left\{ c_{d\sigma}(t), c_{d\sigma}^\dagger(t') \right\} \right\rangle \quad (2.14.30)$$

Since the Hamiltonian is time-translation invariant, we can drop one of the instants:

$$G_{d\sigma}(t, 0) = -i\theta(t) \left\langle \left\{ c_{d\sigma}(t), c_{d\sigma}^\dagger(0) \right\} \right\rangle \quad (2.14.31)$$

The time derivative is

$$\begin{aligned}\partial_t G_{d\sigma} &= -i \left[ \partial_t \theta(t) \left\langle \left\{ c_{d\sigma}(t), c_{d\sigma}^\dagger(0) \right\} \right\rangle + \theta(t) \partial_t \left\langle \left\{ c_{d\sigma}(t), c_{d\sigma}^\dagger(0) \right\} \right\rangle \right] \\ &= -i \left[ \delta(t) \left\langle \left\{ c_{d\sigma}(t), c_{d\sigma}^\dagger(0) \right\} \right\rangle + \theta(t) \left\langle \left\{ \partial_t c_{d\sigma}(t), c_{d\sigma}^\dagger(0) \right\} \right\rangle \right] = -i\delta(t) - i\theta(t) \left\langle \left\{ \partial_t c_{d\sigma}(t), c_{d\sigma}^\dagger(0) \right\} \right\rangle\end{aligned}\quad (2.14.32)$$

From the Heisenberg equations of motion, we get

$$i\partial_t c_{d\sigma}(t) = [c_{d\sigma}(t), \mathcal{H}_{LM}(t)] = [\epsilon_d + U \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(t)] c_{d\sigma}(t) \quad (2.14.33)$$

Substituting this into the time-derivative gives

$$\partial_t G_{d\sigma} = -i\delta(t) - i\theta(t) \left\langle \left\{ -i [\epsilon_d + U \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(t)] c_{d\sigma}(t), c_{d\sigma}^\dagger(0) \right\} \right\rangle = -i\delta(t) - i\epsilon_d G_{d\sigma} - U\theta(t) \left\langle \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(t) \left\{ c_{d\sigma}(t), c_{d\sigma}^\dagger(0) \right\} \right\rangle \quad (2.14.34)$$

We define another Greens function

$$G' = -i\theta(t) \left\langle \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(t) \left\{ c_{d\sigma}(t), c_{d\sigma}^\dagger(0) \right\} \right\rangle \quad (2.14.35)$$

which satisfies the equation of motion

$$\partial_t G' = -i\delta(t) - i\theta(t) \left\langle \left\{ \partial_t \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(t) c_{d\sigma}(t), c_{d\sigma}^\dagger(0) \right\} \right\rangle - i\theta(t) \left\langle \left\{ \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(t) \partial_t c_{d\sigma}(t), c_{d\sigma}^\dagger(0) \right\} \right\rangle \quad (2.14.36)$$

The second term vanishes because  $[\hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}, \mathcal{H}_{LM}] = 0$  and hence  $\partial_t \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}} = 0$ . Also,

$$\hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(t) \partial_t c_{d\sigma}(t) = -i\hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(t) [\epsilon_d + U \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(t)] c_{d\sigma}(t) = -i [\epsilon_d + U] \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(t) c_{d\sigma}(t) \quad (2.14.37)$$

Therefore,

$$\partial_t G' = -i\delta(t) \langle \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(0) \rangle - [\epsilon_d + U] \theta(t) \left\langle \left\{ \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(t) c_{d\sigma}(t), c_{d\sigma}^\dagger(0) \right\} \right\rangle = -i\delta(t) - i(\epsilon_d + U) G' \quad (2.14.38)$$

Changing all quantities to frequency-domain:

$$\begin{aligned}G'(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d\omega e^{-i\omega t} G'(\omega) \\ \partial_t G'(t) &= - \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d\omega i\omega e^{-i\omega t} G'(\omega) \\ \delta(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d\omega e^{-i\omega t}\end{aligned}\quad (2.14.39)$$

Substituting these forms in the equation and comparing the coefficients of  $e^{i\omega t}$  gives

$$\omega G'(\omega) = \langle \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(0) \rangle + (\epsilon_d + U) G'(\omega) \implies G'(\omega) = \frac{\langle \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(0) \rangle}{\omega - \epsilon_d - U} \quad (2.14.40)$$

The equation of motion  $G_{d\sigma}$  can now be solved

$$\begin{aligned}\partial_t G_{d\sigma}(t) &= -i\delta(t) - i\epsilon_d G_{d\sigma}(t) - iU G'_{d\sigma}(t) \implies \omega G_{d\sigma}(\omega) = 1 + \epsilon_d G_{d\sigma}(\omega) + U \frac{\langle \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(0) \rangle}{\omega - \epsilon_d - U} \\ \implies G_{d\sigma}(\omega) &= \frac{1}{\omega - \epsilon_d} + \frac{U \langle \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(0) \rangle}{(\omega - \epsilon_d)(\omega - \epsilon_d - U)}\end{aligned}\quad (2.14.41)$$

For a particle-hole symmetric system, we can substitute  $\epsilon_d = -|\epsilon_d|$  and  $\epsilon_d + U = |\epsilon_d|$ .

$$G_{d\sigma}(\omega) = \frac{1}{\omega + |\epsilon_d|} + \frac{U \langle \hat{n}_{d\bar{\sigma}}(0) \rangle}{(\omega + |\epsilon_d|)(\omega - |\epsilon_d|)} \quad (2.14.42)$$

which reveals two poles at  $\pm|\epsilon_d|$ , one above and one below the Fermi surface. Since the RHS of eq. (2.14.23) counts the number of poles on or below the FS, we will still count one pole for  $G_{d\sigma}$ . Thus, this Green's function is topological similar to the free-orbital one at  $T = 0$ .

The scattering phase shift suffered by the conduction electrons at the Fermi surface, off the impurity, can be calculated from the impurity occupancy, using the Friedel sum rule. From the ground state wavefunction, we can calculate the average number of particles on the impurity:

$$\langle n_d \rangle = \langle \Psi |_1 \sum_{\sigma} \hat{n}_{d\sigma} | \Psi \rangle_1 \quad (2.14.43)$$

$|\Psi\rangle_1$  is the lower energy state in eq. (2.4.5). Performing the inner product gives

$$\langle n_d \rangle = \left(c_s^-\right)^2 + \left(c_c^-\right)^2 = 1 \quad (2.14.44)$$

The phase shift is thus

$$\frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{\sigma} \delta_{\sigma}(0) = \langle n_d \rangle \implies \delta_{\sigma}(0) = \frac{\pi}{2} \quad (2.14.45)$$

There we used  $\delta_{\uparrow} = \delta_{\downarrow}$  because the model is SU(2)-symmetric. This line of arguments was first presented for the Kondo model in [22].

The change in Luttinger's number also allows us to calculate the Wilson ratio of the system, from eq. (E.0.7).

$$R = 1 + \sin^2 \left( \frac{\pi}{2} \Delta N_L \right) = 1 + \sin^2 \frac{\pi}{2} = 2 \quad (2.14.46)$$

## 2.15 Reverse RG analysis

The goal here is to chart the journey starting from the IR fixed point towards the UV regime, by following one particular wavefunction. We will start with a very simple IR ground state wavefunction, and then go back towards the UV ground state by applying the inverse unitary operator  $U^\dagger$ :

$$\begin{aligned} U : \underbrace{|1, 2, \dots, N\rangle}_{\text{UV ground state}} &\rightarrow |1, 2, \dots, N-1\rangle |N\rangle \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \underbrace{|1, 2, \dots, N^*\rangle |N^*+1\rangle \dots |N\rangle}_{\text{IR ground state}} \\ U^\dagger : \underbrace{|1, 2, \dots, N^*\rangle |N^*+1\rangle \dots |N\rangle}_{\text{IR ground state}} &\rightarrow |1, 2, \dots, N^*+1\rangle |N^*+2\rangle \dots |N\rangle \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \underbrace{|1, 2, \dots, N\rangle}_{\text{UV ground state}} \end{aligned}$$

The first process is the forward RG which we used to obtain the scaling equations. The second process is the reverse RG which we will undertake now. In general, we start with an IR wavefunction that consists a certain number of momentum states  $n_1$  still entangled with the impurity, and the remaining momentum states  $n_2$  disentangled from the impurity. The former are said to be part of the emergent Kondo cloud, while the latter are said to be part of the integrals of motion (IOMs) and appear in direct product with the cloud+impurity system in the ground state wavefunction. Each momentum state is tagged with two conduction bath levels, one above the Fermi surface and one below. These will be represented as  $k, \pm$ . If we represent the emergent cloud momentum states as  $\{k_i\}$  and the IOM states as  $\{q_i\}$ , the ground state wavefunction can be written as

$$|\Psi\rangle_0 = \left( \otimes_{i=1}^{n_2} |q_i, -, \uparrow\rangle |q_i, -, \downarrow\rangle \right) |\Phi\rangle_{\text{cloud}} \left( \otimes_{i=1}^{n_1} |q_i, +, \uparrow\rangle |q_i, +, \downarrow\rangle \right) \quad (2.15.1)$$

Throughout, we have assumed that the IOMs below the Fermi surface are occupied while those above are unoccupied. This means:

$$|\Psi\rangle_0 = \left( \otimes_{i=1}^{n_2} |\hat{n}_{q_i, -, \uparrow} = 1\rangle |\hat{n}_{q_i, -, \downarrow} = 1\rangle \right) |\Phi\rangle_{\text{cloud}} \left( \otimes_{i=1}^{n_1} |\hat{n}_{q_i, +, \uparrow} = 0\rangle |\hat{n}_{q_i, +, \downarrow} = 0\rangle \right) \quad (2.15.2)$$

$|\Phi\rangle_{\text{cloud}}$  will be obtained by diagonalising a small system of  $n_1$  conduction bath  $k$  states. This completes the construction of the IR ground state  $|\Psi\rangle_0$ . The algorithm of reverse RG then involves applying unitary transformations on this IR wavefunction; the unitary transformations will be the inverse of those that were applied during the forward RG algorithm. Since the forwards RG transformations decoupled  $k$  states and transformed them into the IOMS, the inverse transformations will take the momentum states in the IOMs and re-entangle them with the impurity+cloud system, one at a time. This is shown in fig. 2.12.

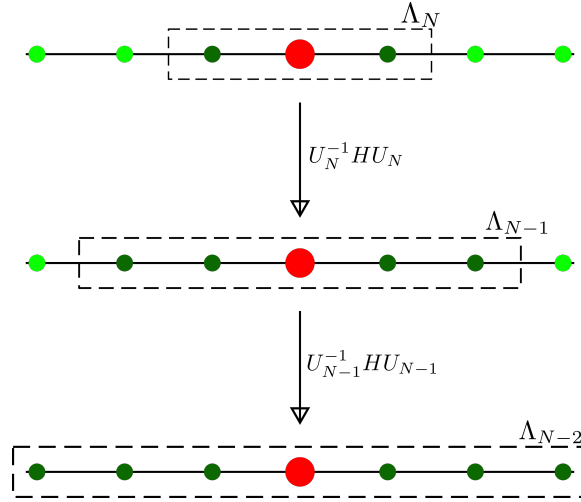


Figure 2.12: We start with a Hamiltonian with an impurity site (red) coupled with two conduction electrons (dark green), with four other decoupled electrons (bright green). The dotted rectangle represents the emergent window  $(-\Lambda_j, \Lambda_j)$  at each step; the electrons inside that rectangle are still entangled with the impurity, while the ones inside have been decoupled. The next step of reverse RG involves applying the inverse transformation on the Hamiltonian, which will couple two more electrons from the IOMS (hence four dark green circles in the second step), leading to an enlargement of the emergent window. The unitary varies for each step, hence the notation  $U_j$ .

The next step is to write down the unitaries that will take us from the IR ground state to the UV ground state. In the forward RG, we used the following unitary for decoupling the shell  $\epsilon_q$  and spin  $\beta$  is

$$U_{q\beta} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left[ 1 + \eta_{0\beta} + \eta_{1\beta}^\dagger \right]. \quad (2.15.3)$$

Here, the subscripts 0 and 1 indicate it decouples an electron above and below the Fermi surface respectively. The inverse transformation for re-entangling  $q\beta$  is

$$U_{q\beta}^\dagger = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left[ 1 + \eta_{0\beta}^\dagger + \eta_{1\beta} \right]. \quad (2.15.4)$$

In the  $U > 0$  regime, the  $\eta$ s are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \eta_{0\beta}^\dagger &= V \left[ \frac{1}{d_0} \left( 1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} \right) + \frac{1}{d_1} \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} \right] c_{q\beta}^\dagger c_{d\beta} + \frac{1}{d_2} \frac{J}{2} \sum_k \left( S_d^z \beta c_{q\beta}^\dagger c_{k\beta} + c_{d\bar{\beta}}^\dagger c_{d\beta} c_{q\bar{\beta}}^\dagger c_{k\bar{\beta}} \right), \\ \eta_{1\beta} &= V \left[ \frac{1}{d_1} \left( 1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} \right) + \frac{1}{d_0} \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} \right] c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{q\beta} + \frac{1}{d_2} \frac{J}{2} \sum_k \left( S_d^z \beta c_{k\beta}^\dagger c_{q\beta} + c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{d\bar{\beta}} c_{k\bar{\beta}}^\dagger c_{q\bar{\beta}} \right); \end{aligned} \quad (2.15.5)$$

since  $K$  is irrelevant, we have set  $K = 0$  here. The denominators have already been defined in eq. (2.2.5).

$$d_0 = \omega - \frac{D}{2} - \frac{U}{2} + \frac{K}{4}, \quad d_1 = \omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U}{2} + \frac{J}{4}, \quad d_2 = \omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}, \quad d_3 = \omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4} \quad (2.15.6)$$

The wavefunction after reversing one step of the RG will thus be

$$|\Psi\rangle_1 = U_{q\uparrow}^\dagger U_{q\downarrow}^\dagger |\Psi\rangle_0 \quad (2.15.7)$$

Here,  $q$  is the first momentum state immediately outside the emergent cloud. Re-entangling further momentum states using their respective unitaries lead to the sequence of wavefunctions  $|\Psi\rangle_2, |\Psi\rangle_3$  and so on.

The results of the reverse RG study are depicted in the following plots. We have used two types of quantities in the process - mutual information and correlation functions. The mutual information between two subsystems  $A$  and  $B$  in a wavefunction with many subsystems is defined as

$$I(A : B) = S_A + S_B - S_{AB} \quad (2.15.8)$$



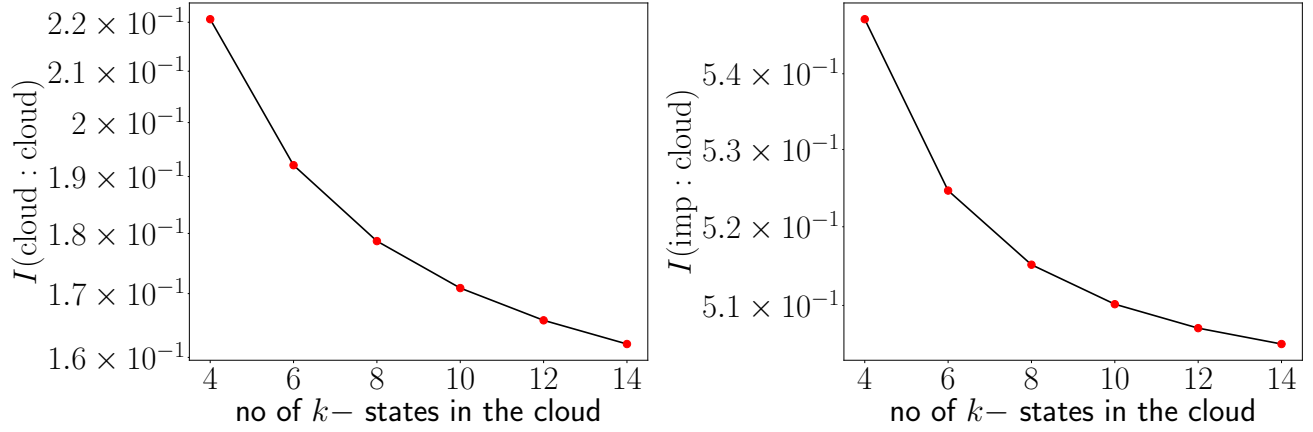


Figure 2.13: *Left*: Mutual information between two conduction electrons inside the cloud. *Right*: Mutual information between a conduction electron inside the cloud and an impurity electron. Both the measures increase towards the strong coupling fixed point, because of the distillation of the Kondo cloud brought about by the RG flow.

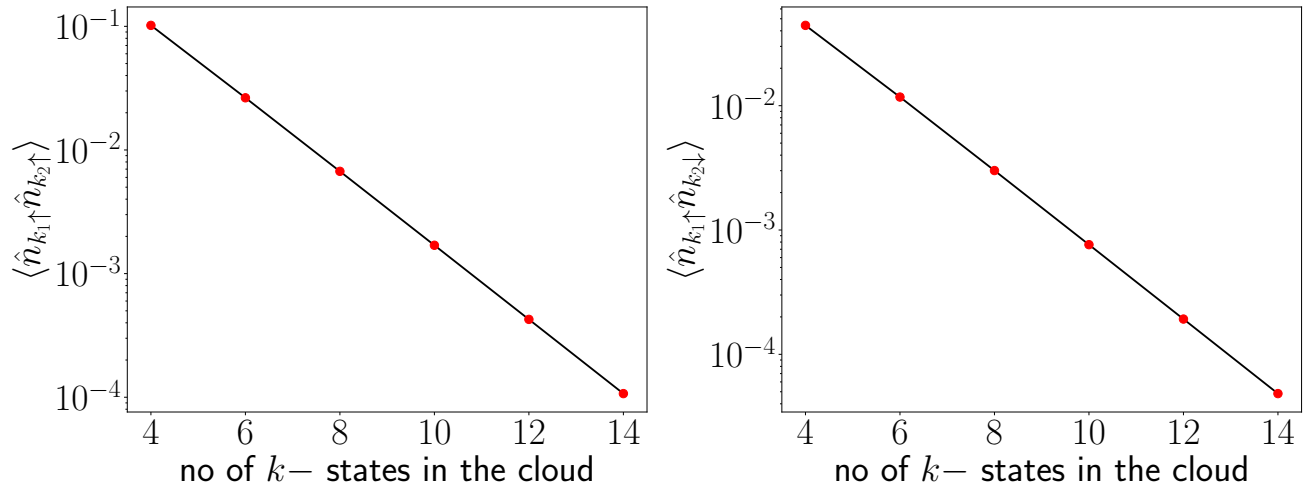


Figure 2.14: Increase in the diagonal correlation functions between cloud electrons under RG flow towards the strong coupling fixed point. This is consistent with the Fermi liquid pieces generated in the  $k$ -space effective Hamiltonian of the Kondo cloud.

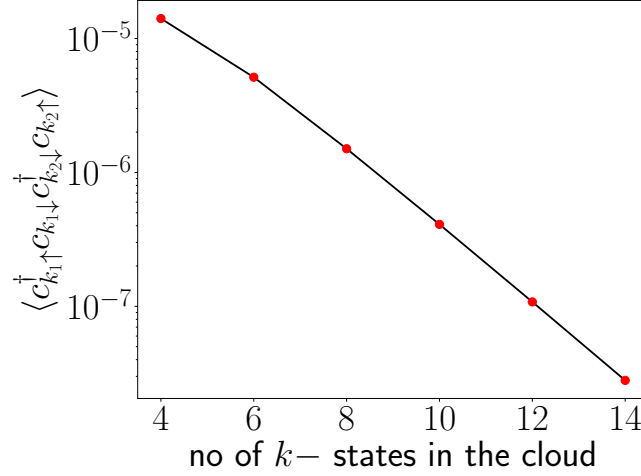


Figure 2.15: Growth of the off-diagonal correlation function between Kondo cloud electrons towards the strong coupling fixed point. This is the direct cause of the screening of the impurity spin, and is a reflection of the off-diagonal two-particle scattering terms in the  $k$ -space effective Hamiltonian of the Kondo cloud.

where  $S_{ij..q}$  is the von-Neumann entropy of the reduced density matrix obtained after tracing out all degrees of freedom except those in the subscript of  $S$ .

The mutual information between two electrons inside the entangled cloud increases as we go towards the IR fixed point. This can be understood in the following manner; as the wavefunction flows towards a smaller sized emergent cloud, the entanglement between those electrons gets distilled out.

We have also computed some correlation functions. All of them increase towards the IR fixed point. The increase in the correlation function  $\langle \hat{n}_{k_1\uparrow} \hat{n}_{k_2\downarrow} \rangle$  arises from the crystallization of the spin singlet at the fixed point. The increase in the correlation function  $\langle \hat{n}_{k\uparrow} \hat{n}_{k\downarrow} \rangle$  arises from the charge triplet content of the wavefunction, showing the increase of the charge contribution on the momenta. The increase in the off-diagonal correlation function  $\langle c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow} c_{q\downarrow}^\dagger c_{q'\uparrow} \rangle$  shows that there is a large and non-trivial interaction between the electrons of the cloud that is being mediated by the impurity electron. This interaction is not of the Fermi liquid type, but instead was obtained in the effective Hamiltonian for the Kondo cloud.

## Chapter 3

# Effect of minimal attractive correlation in the bath

### 3.1 The modified hamiltonian

We will include a local particle-hole symmetric correlation of strength  $U_b$  on the origin of the lattice:

$$\mathcal{H} = \sum_{k\sigma} \epsilon_k \tau_{k\sigma} + \epsilon_d \left( \hat{n}_{d\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{d\downarrow} \right)^2 + \sum_{k\sigma} \left( V_k c_{k\sigma}^\dagger c_{d\sigma} + h.c. \right) + J \vec{S}_d \cdot \vec{s} - U_b \left( \hat{n}_{0\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{0\downarrow} \right)^2 \quad (3.1.1)$$

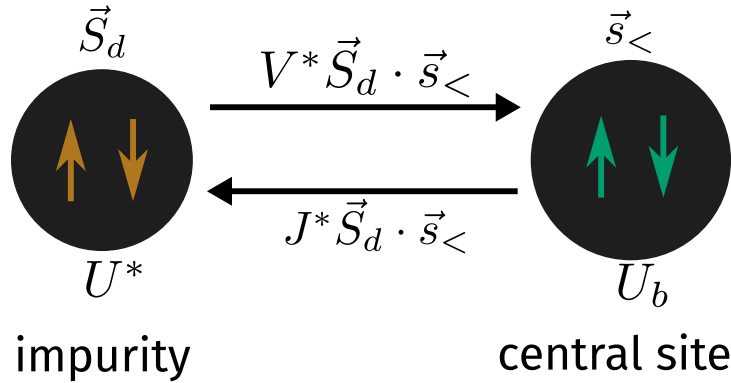


Figure 3.1: While we have studied the full model under renormalisation group, often we will turn to a simplified zero-bandwidth version of the model that is obtained by ignoring the kinetic energy part of the Hamiltonian. This zero-bandwidth model is effectively a two site model.

### 3.2 RG Equations

The derivation of the RG equations are shown at the end.  $n_j$  is the number of  $k$ -states at the  $j^{\text{th}}$  isoenergetic shell.

$$\Delta U_b = 0, \quad \Delta U = 4V^2 n_j \left( \frac{1}{d_1} - \frac{1}{d_0} \right) - n_j \left( \frac{J^2}{d_2} - \frac{K^2}{d_3} \right), \quad (3.2.1)$$

$$\Delta V = -\frac{3n_j V}{8} \left[ (J + 4U_b/3) \left( \frac{1}{d_2} + \frac{1}{d_1} \right) + (K + 4U_b/3) \left( \frac{1}{d_3} + \frac{1}{d_0} \right) \right], \quad (3.2.2)$$

$$\Delta J = -\frac{n_j J (J + 4U_b)}{d_2}, \quad \Delta K = -\frac{n_j K (K + 4U_b)}{d_3} \quad (3.2.3)$$

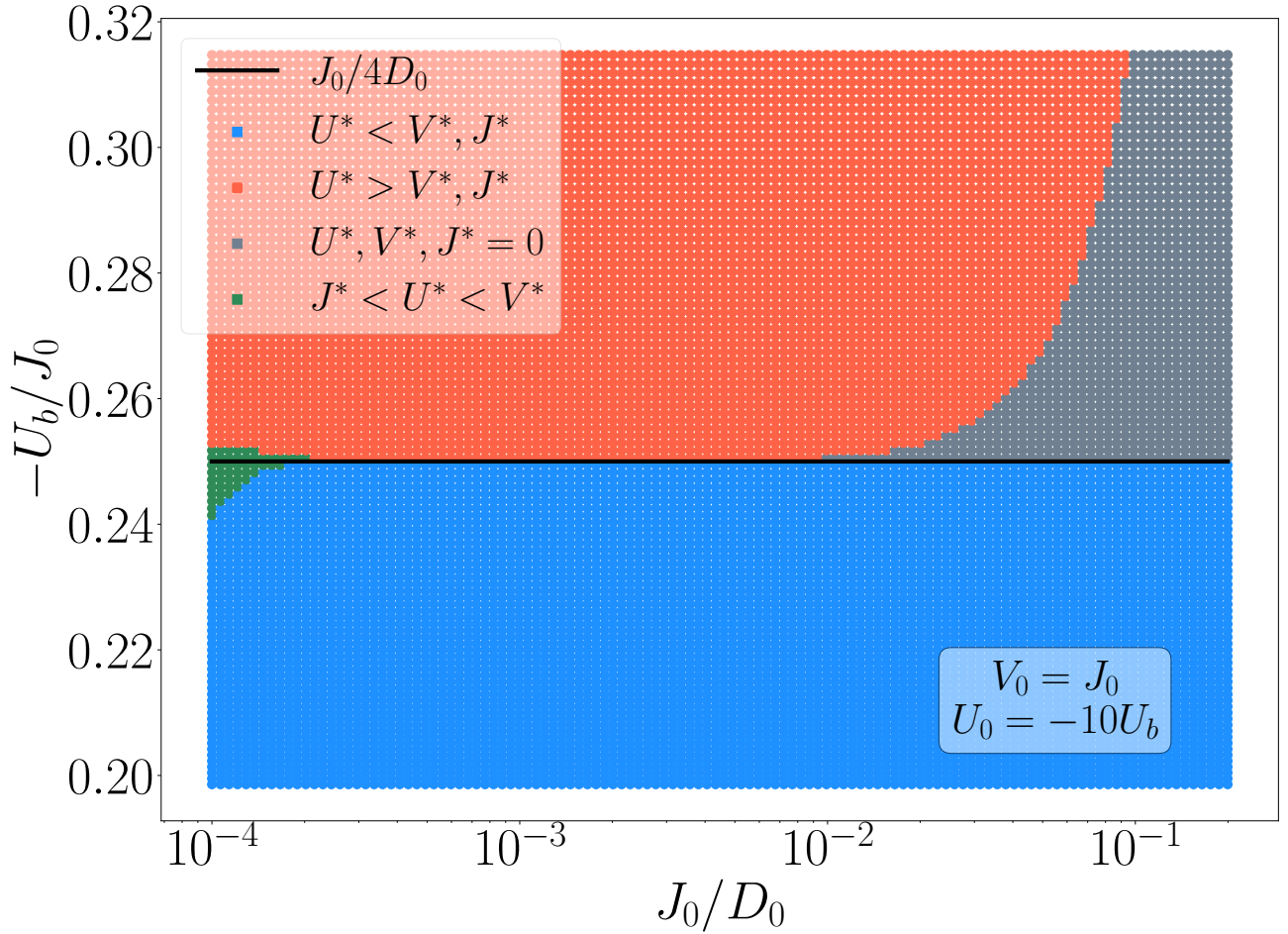
The denominators are

$$d_0 = \omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{2} - \frac{U}{2} + \frac{K}{4}, \quad d_1 = \omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{2} + \frac{U}{2} + \frac{J}{4}, \quad d_2 = \omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{2} + \frac{J}{4}, \quad d_3 = \omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{2} + \frac{K}{4} \quad (3.2.4)$$

### Important points regarding notation

- The labels  $U_0, J_0, V_0$  that may occur in the axes of the plots or anywhere else represent the bare values of the couplings  $U, J$  and  $V$ .
- Throughout the upcoming results, the bare value of  $U_b$  is set to the negative of the bare value of  $U_0$ :  $U_b = -U_0/10$ . This means that whenever we vary  $U_0$  along the axis of a plot, we are simultaneously varying  $U_b$ .

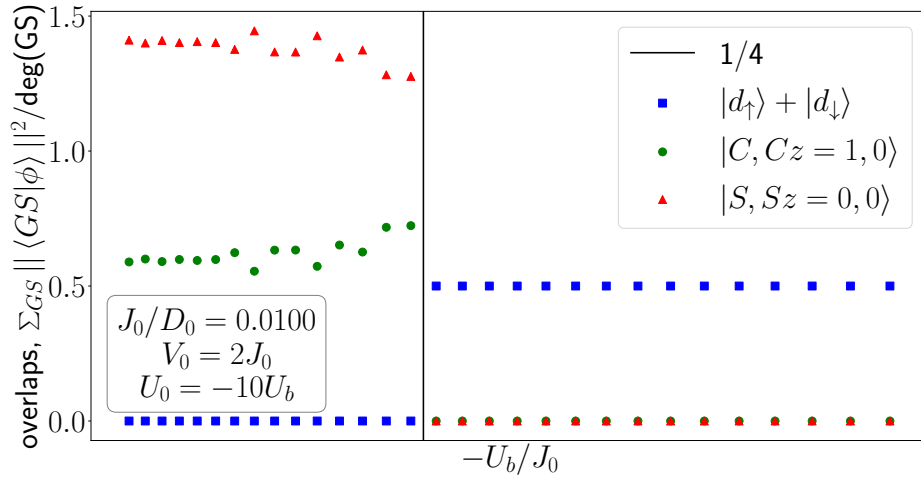
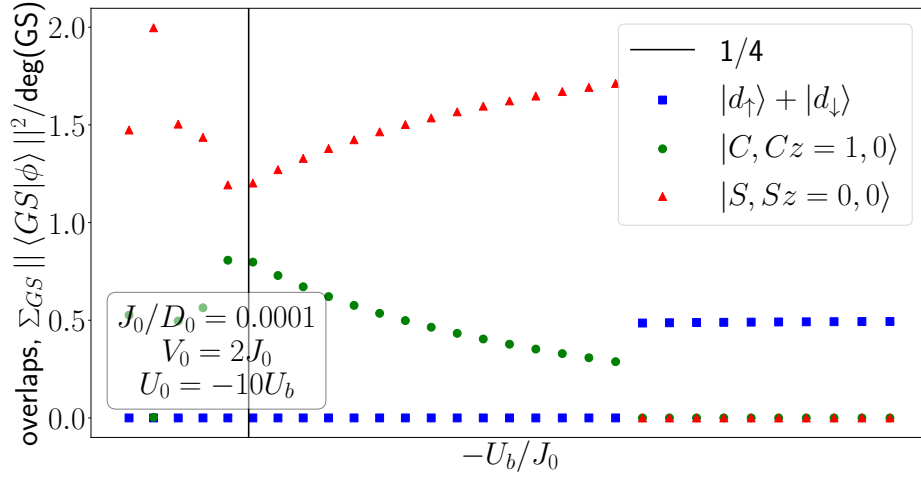
### 3.3 Phase diagram

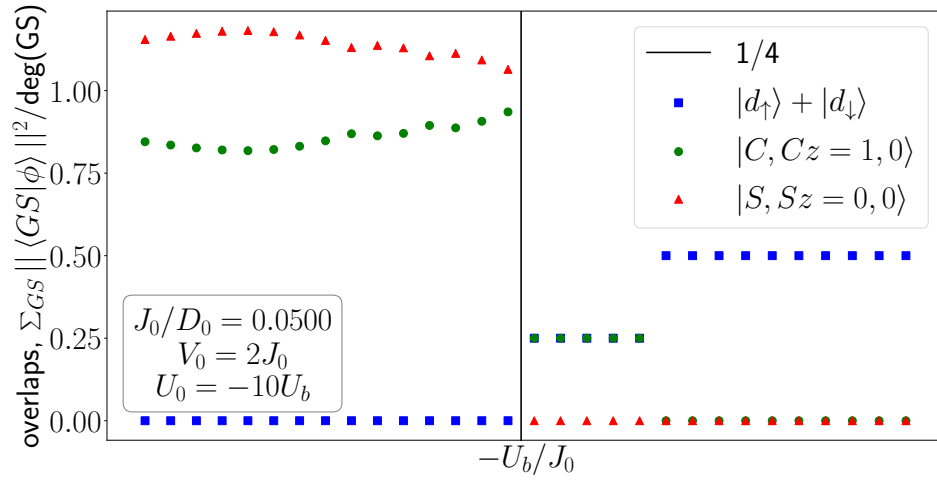


phase	RG flow	fixed point	GS	2-site GS
blue	$\Delta U < 0, \Delta J, \Delta V > 0$	$U^* \ll V^* \ll J^*$	SS	$ SS\rangle =  \uparrow, \downarrow\rangle -  \downarrow, \uparrow\rangle$
green	$\Delta U < 0, \Delta J < 0, \Delta V > 0$	$J^* < U^* \ll V^*$	SS + CT-0	$c SS\rangle + \sqrt{1-c^2} CT-0\rangle$
red	$\Delta U > 0, \Delta J, \Delta V < 0$	$U^* \gg 1, V^* = J^* = 0$	decoupled LM	$\{ \uparrow\rangle,  \downarrow\rangle\} \otimes \{ 0\rangle,  2\rangle\}$
gray	$\Delta U, \Delta J, \Delta V < 0$	$U^* = V^* = J^* = 0$	lattice	$\{ \uparrow\rangle,  \downarrow\rangle,  0\rangle,  2\rangle\} \otimes \{ 0\rangle,  2\rangle\}$

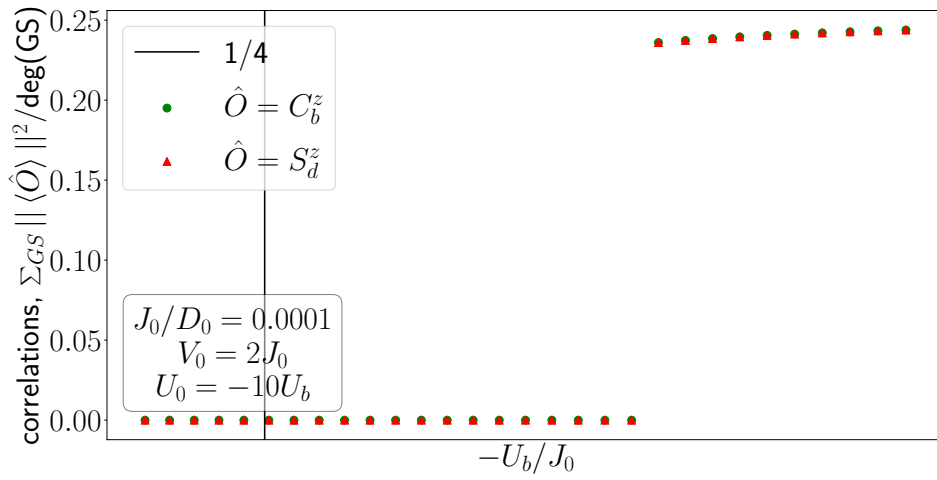
### 3.4 Evolution of the groundstate across the transition

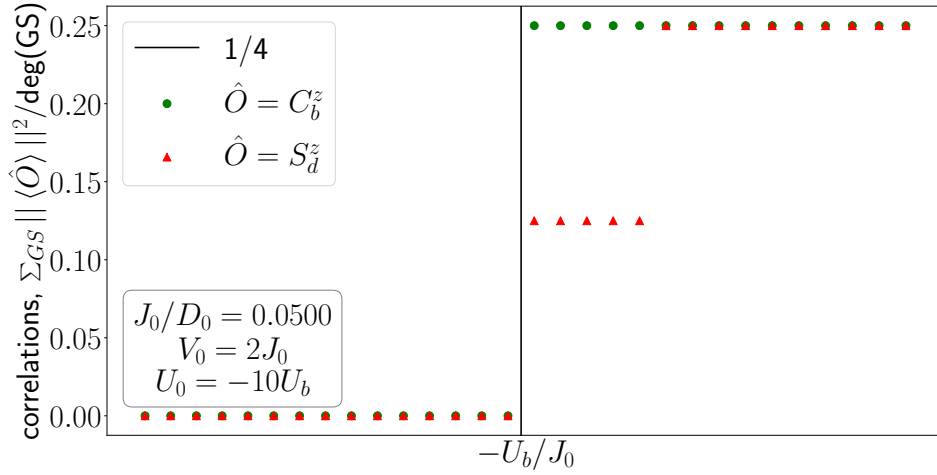
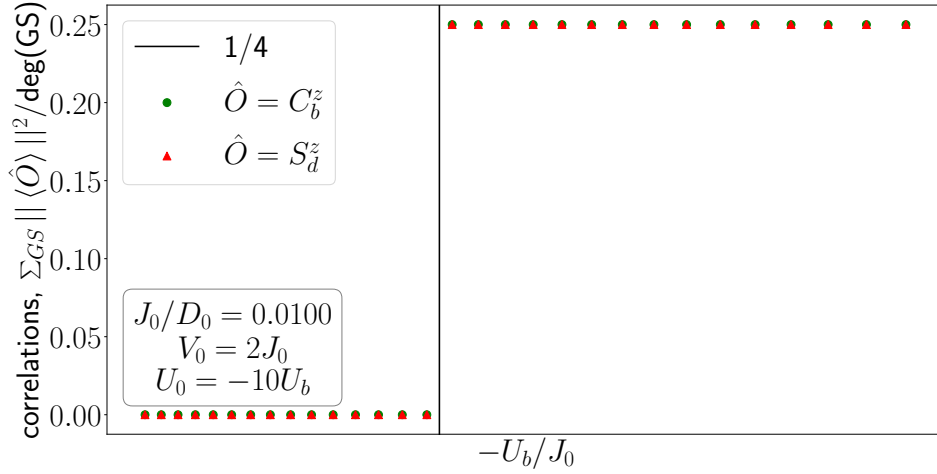
#### Overlap of ground state against spin singlet and charge triplet zero states





### Spin and charge correlations in ground state

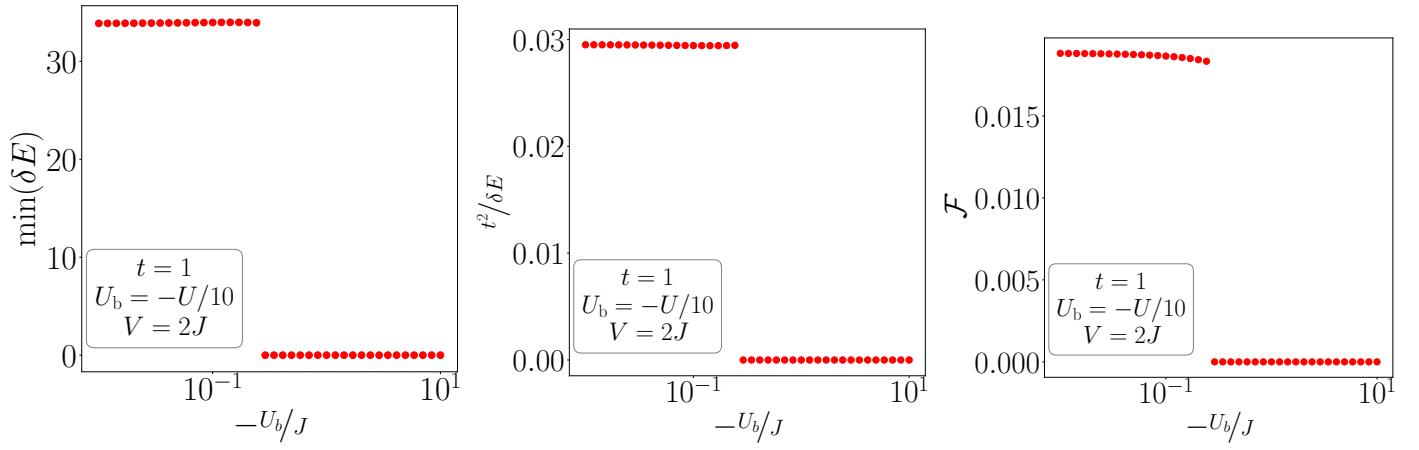




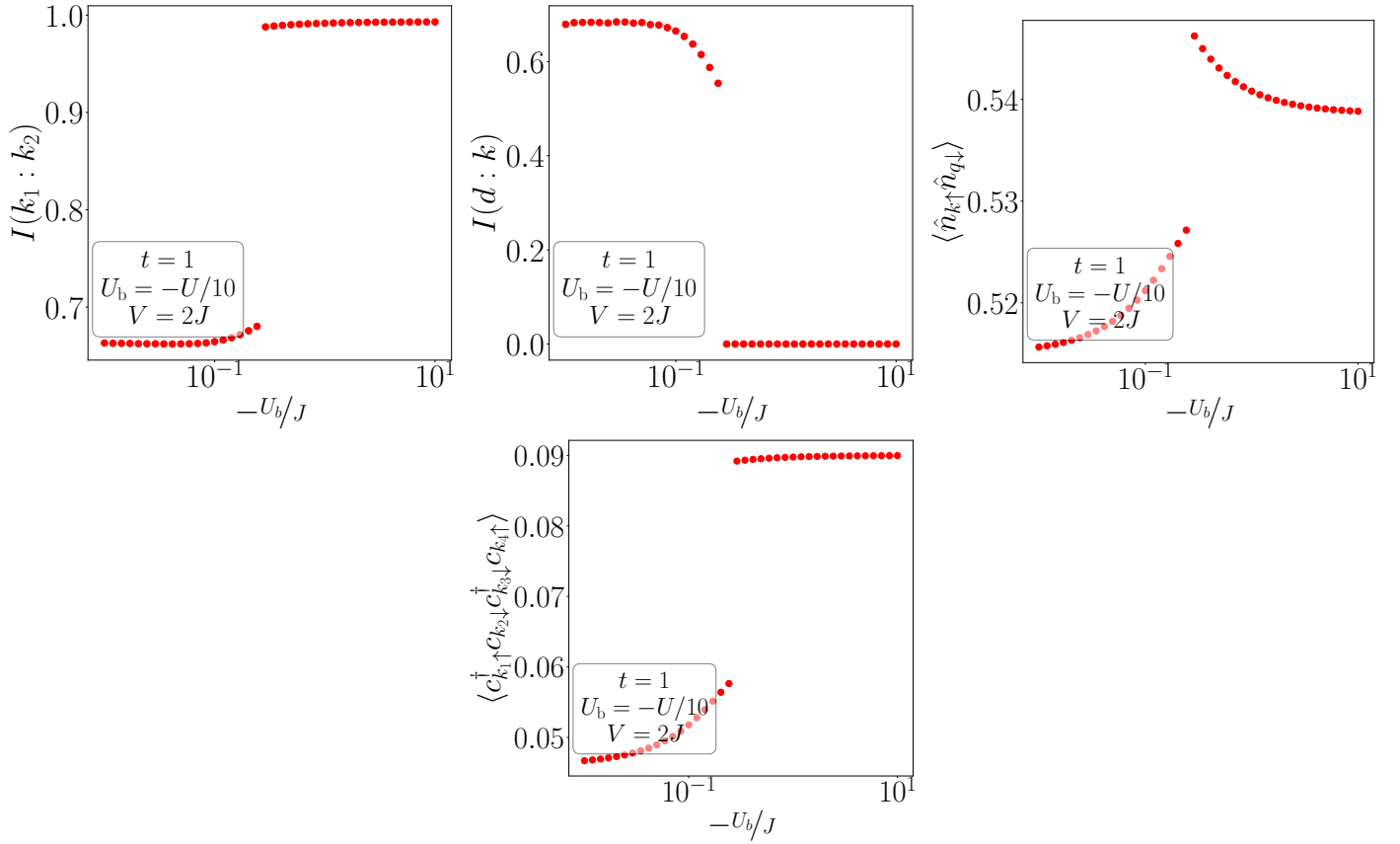
### 3.5 Evolution of various correlation measures and other quantities

#### Perturbation theoretic terms

These quantities are related to the local Fermi liquid of the Kondo strong coupling fixed point and the perturbation theory associated with it.  $\min(\delta E)$  is the gap in the spectrum of the two-site Hamiltonian; this which acts as the denominator for the perturbation theoretic calculations.  $t^2/\delta E$  is the small parameter for the expansion,  $t$  being the tight-binding hopping.  $\mathcal{F}$  is the strength of the local Fermi liquid ( $\mathcal{F}\hat{n}_{1\uparrow}\hat{n}_{1\downarrow}$ ).

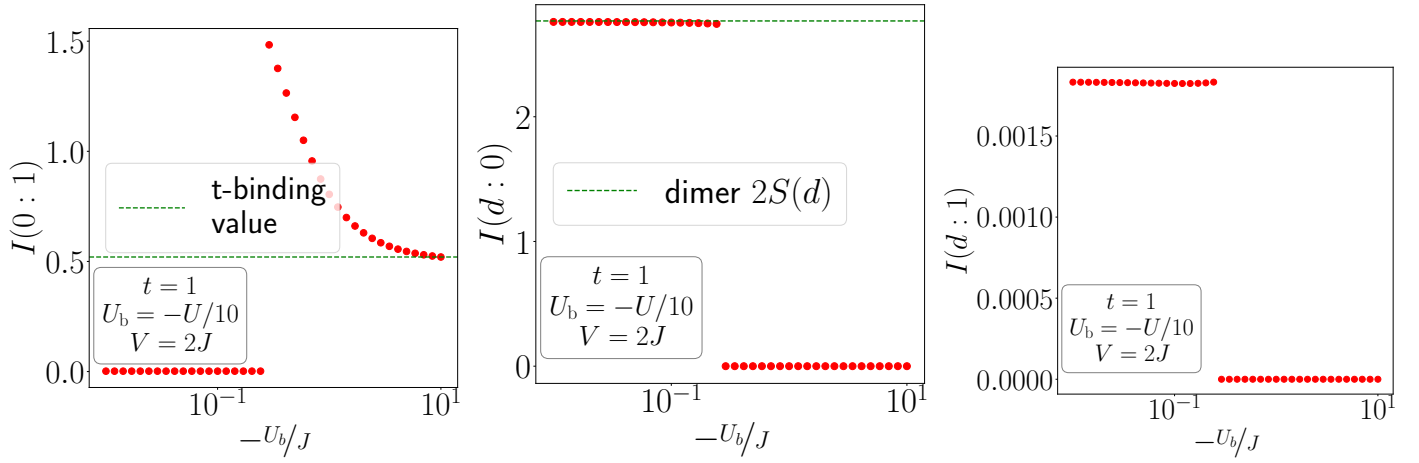


### Correlation within the Kondo cloud

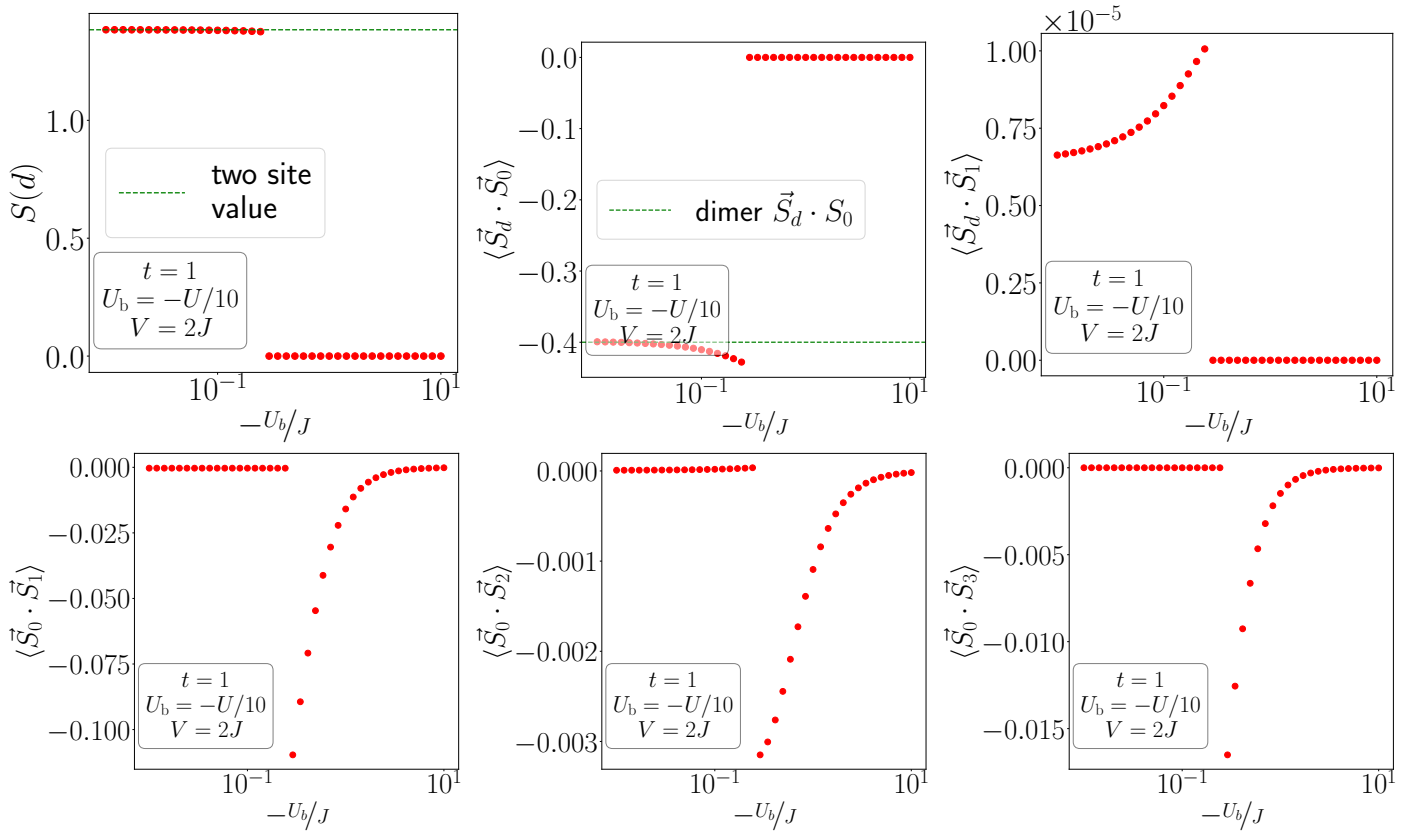




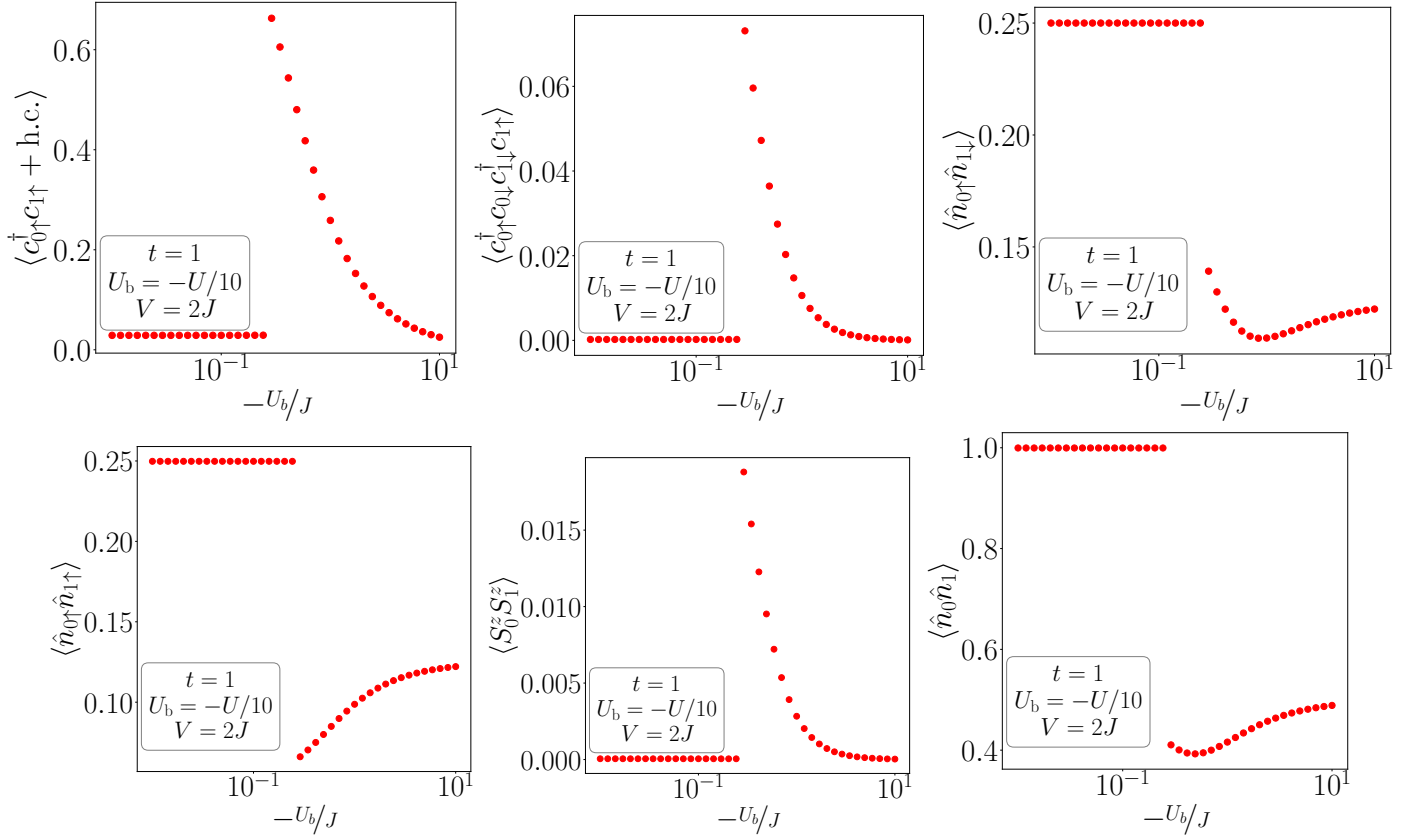
### Mutual information between various real space members



### Impurity entanglement entropy and spin-spin correlations



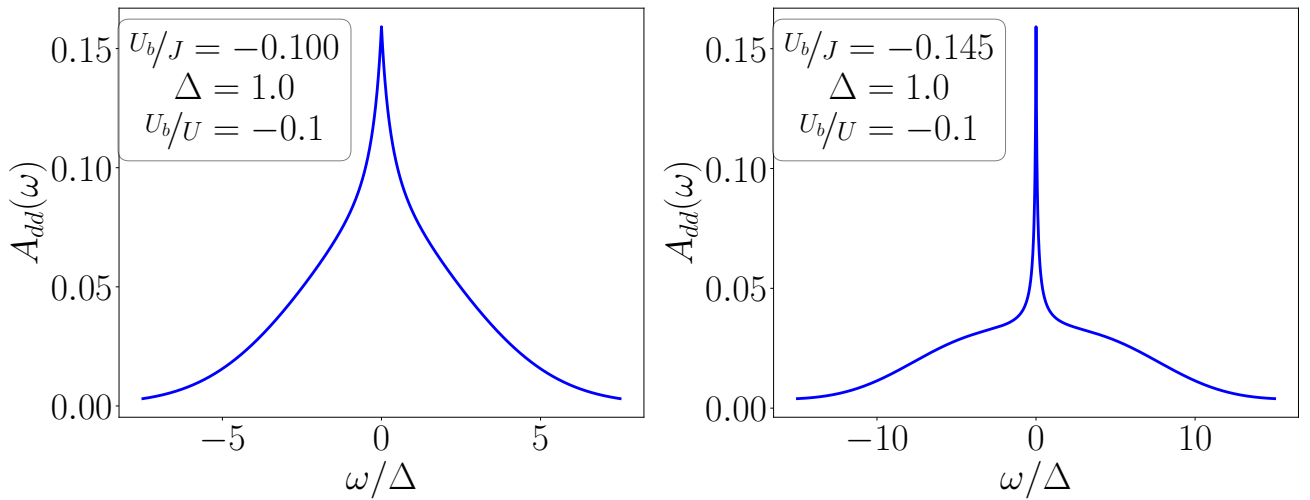
## Real-space correlations

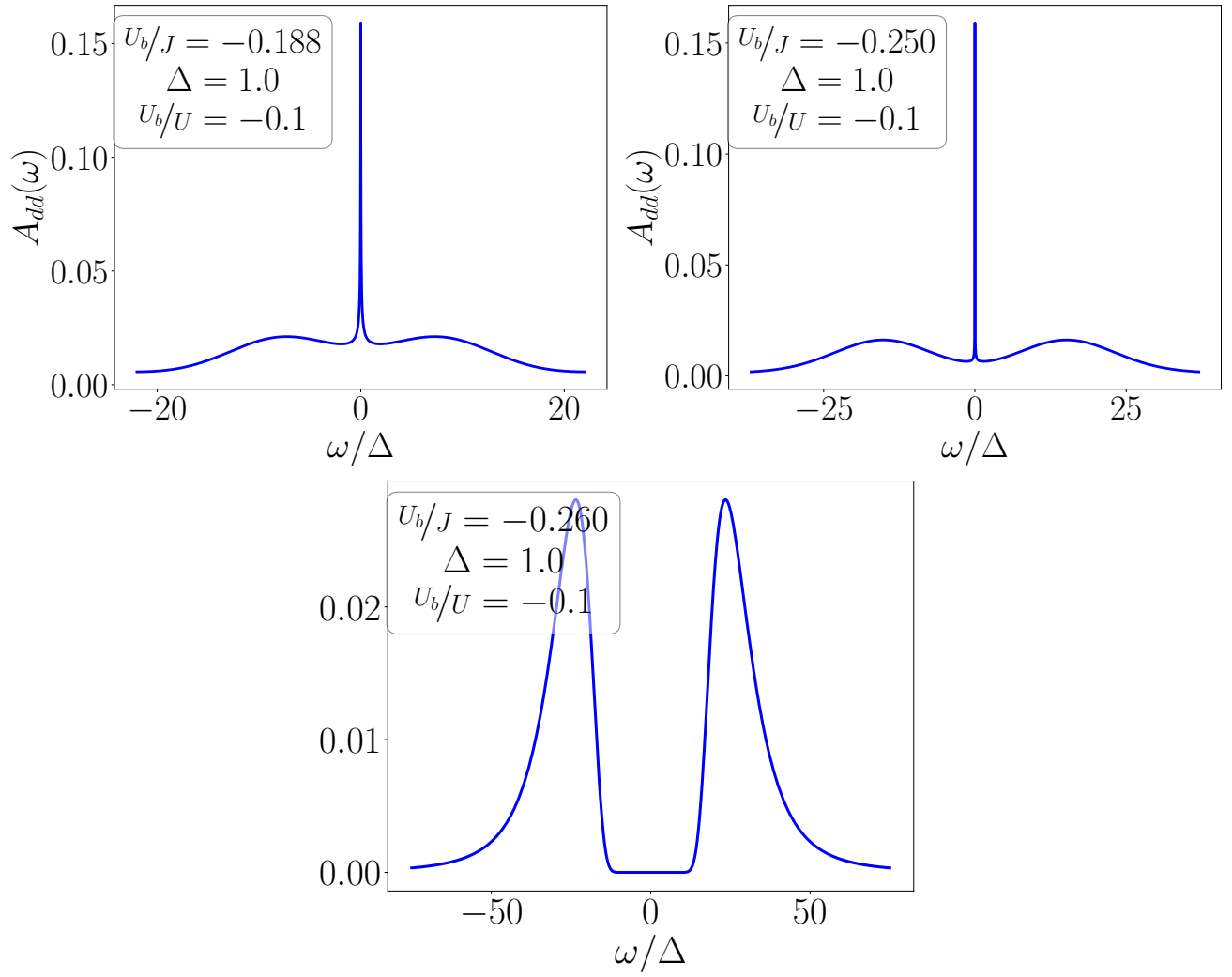


## 3.6 Spectral functions

### 3.6.1 Impurity spectral function $A_{dd}(\omega)$

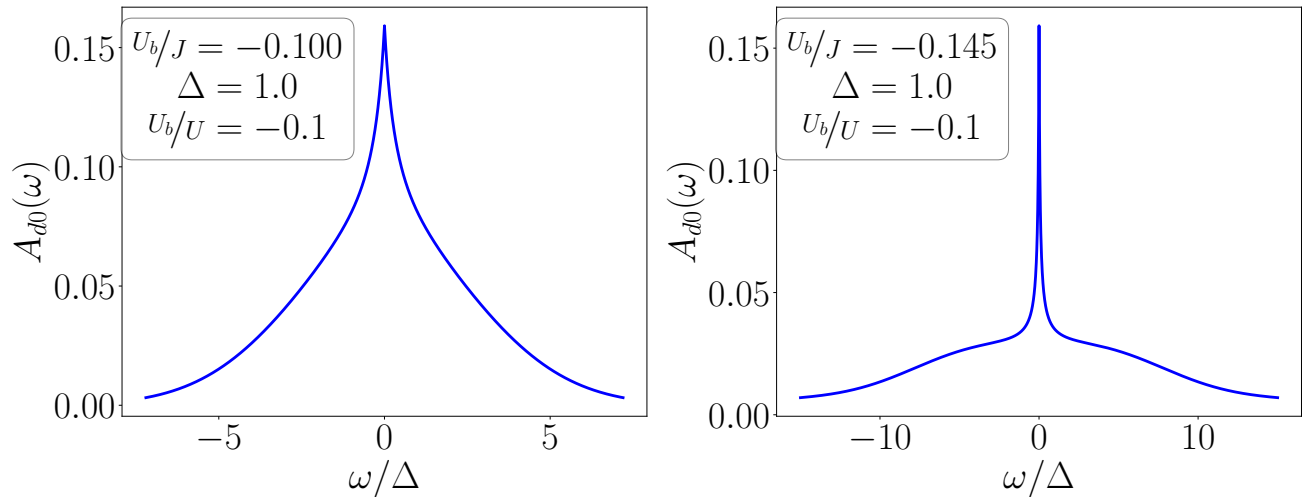
These are the frequency-domain spectral functions for the retarded propagator  $-i\theta(t) \langle \{c_{d\sigma}(t), c_{d\sigma}^\dagger\} \rangle$ :

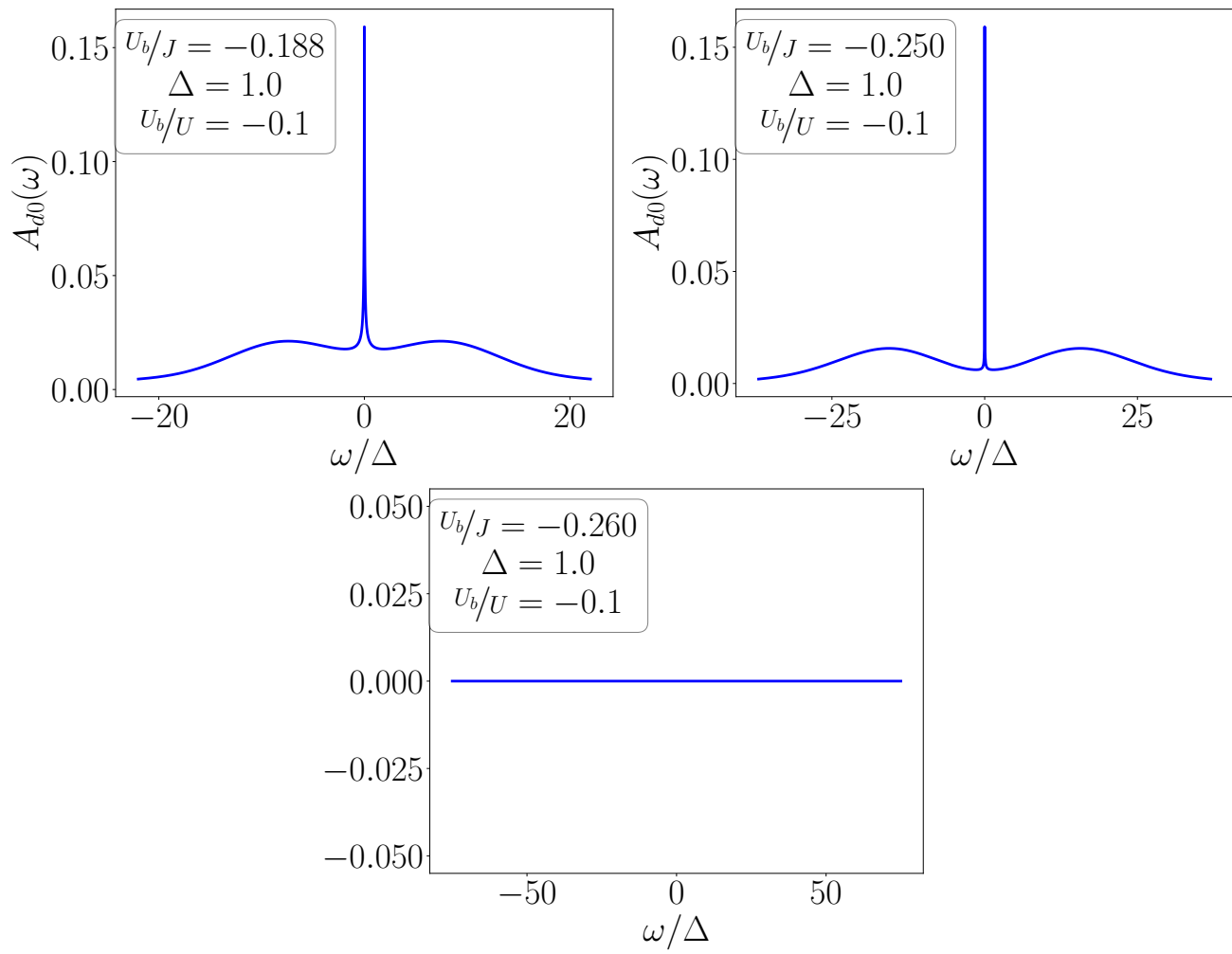




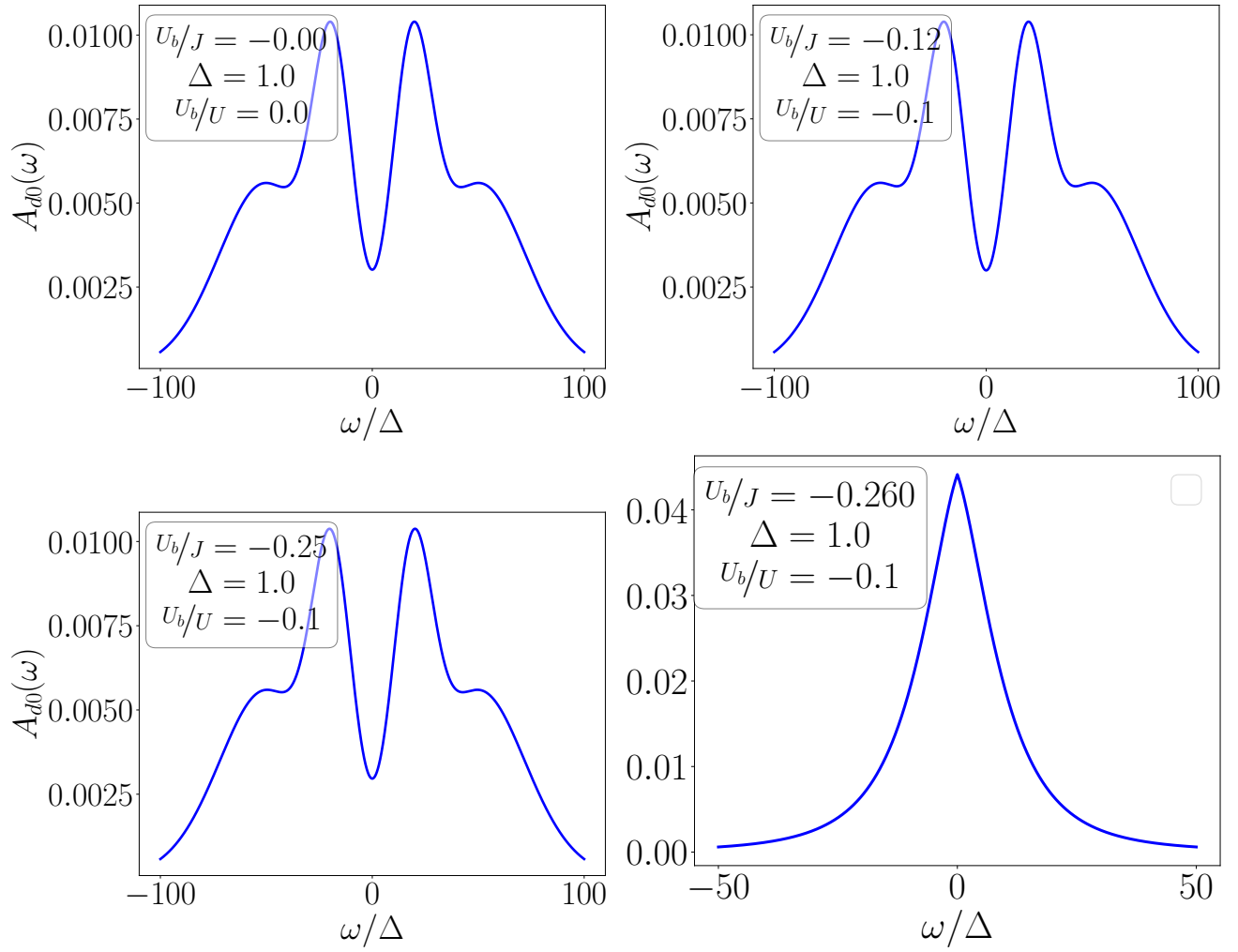
### 3.6.2 Impurity-bath off-diagonal spectral function $A_{dz}(\omega)$

These are the frequency-domain spectral functions for the off-diagonal retarded propagator  $-i\theta(t) \langle \{c_{d\sigma}(t), c_{0\sigma}^\dagger\} \rangle$ :

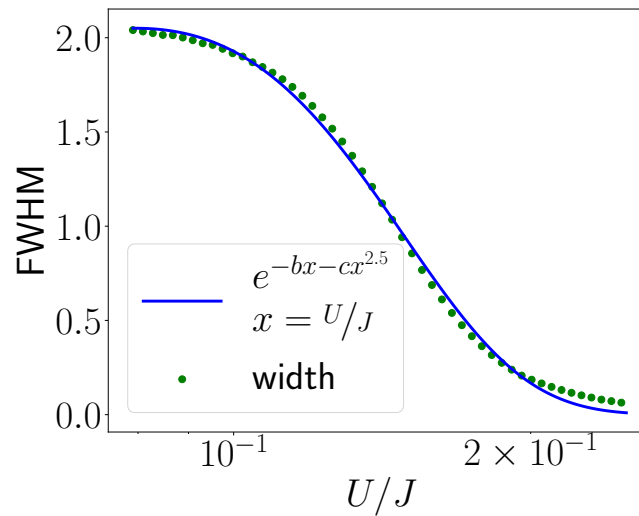




### 3.6.3 Bath spectral function $A_{00}(\omega)$



### 3.6.4 Width of central peak of $A_{dd}$



## Chapter 4

# From the auxiliary model to the bulk - single site approach

### 4.1 Creating $N$ -site Hubbard Hamiltonian from Anderson impurity embedded in an interacting bath

Previously, we have worked out the groundstate phases of a single-impurity model with an interacting bath:

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}} = \sum_{k\sigma} \epsilon_k \tau_{k\sigma} - \frac{U}{2} (\hat{n}_{d\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{d\downarrow})^2 + \sum_{k\sigma} (V_k c_{k\sigma}^\dagger c_{d\sigma} + h.c.) + J \vec{S}_d \cdot \vec{s} - U_b (\hat{n}_{0\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{0\downarrow})^2 \quad (4.1.1)$$

We will use this as the auxiliary model to study the Hubbard model. We do this by first recreating the Hubbard model upon tiling the lattice with instances of this auxiliary model Hamiltonian. To begin this procedure, we first create the unit of tiling - this is done by identifying the impurity as a particular site  $i$  of the lattice, and the bath coupled to the impurity as the set of remaining  $N - 1$  sites in the lattice. We will also identify the zeroth site of the SIAM lattice as one of the nearest neighbours  $j$  of  $i$ :

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}}(i, j) = -2t \sum_{\langle m, n \rangle, \sigma}^{m \neq i \neq n} (c_{m\sigma}^\dagger c_{n\sigma} + h.c.) - \frac{U}{2} (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2 + V \sum_{\sigma} (c_{j\sigma}^\dagger c_{i\sigma} + h.c.) + J \vec{S}_i \cdot \vec{S}_j - U_b (\hat{n}_{j\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{j\downarrow})^2 \quad (4.1.2)$$

The tight-binding term sums over all nearest pairs  $(m, n)$  that do not involve the site  $i$ . In general  $i$  will have  $w$  nearest neighbours for a lattice with coordination number  $w$ . The total local Hamiltonian for the site  $i$  is obtained by averaging over the Hamiltonians  $\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}}(i, j)$  for all nearest neighbours  $j$  of  $i$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}}(i) &= \frac{1}{w} \sum_{j \in \text{NN of } i} \mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}}(i, j) = -\frac{U}{2} (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2 + \frac{1}{w} \sum_{j \in \text{NN of } i} \left[ -2t \sum_{\langle m, n \rangle, \sigma}^{m \neq i \neq n} (c_{m\sigma}^\dagger c_{n\sigma} + h.c.) + V \sum_{\sigma} (c_{j\sigma}^\dagger c_{i\sigma} + h.c.) \right. \\ &\quad \left. + J \vec{S}_i \cdot \vec{S}_j - U_b (\hat{n}_{j\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{j\downarrow})^2 \right] \\ &= -\frac{U}{2} (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2 - 2t \sum_{\langle m, n \rangle, \sigma}^{m \neq i \neq n} (c_{m\sigma}^\dagger c_{n\sigma} + h.c.) + \frac{1}{w} \sum_{j \in \text{NN of } i} \left[ V \sum_{\sigma} (c_{j\sigma}^\dagger c_{i\sigma} + h.c.) + J \vec{S}_i \cdot \vec{S}_j \right. \\ &\quad \left. - U_b (\hat{n}_{j\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{j\downarrow})^2 \right] \end{aligned} \quad (4.1.3)$$

Once we have this local Hamiltonian for a particular site, we translate this over all sites  $i$ :

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{H}_{\text{full}} &= \sum_i \mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}}(i) = \sum_i \left[ -\frac{U}{2} (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2 - 2t \sum_{\substack{m \neq i \neq n \\ \langle m, n \rangle, \sigma}} (c_{m\sigma}^\dagger c_{n\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + \frac{1}{w} \sum_{j \in \text{NN of } i} \left[ V \sum_{\sigma} (c_{j\sigma}^\dagger c_{i\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) \right. \right. \\ &\quad \left. \left. + J \vec{S}_i \cdot \vec{S}_j - U_b (\hat{n}_{j\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{j\downarrow})^2 \right] \right] \\ &= -\left(\frac{U}{2} + U_b\right) \sum_i (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2 + \sum_i \left[ -2t \sum_{\substack{m \neq i \neq n \\ \langle m, n \rangle, \sigma}} (c_{m\sigma}^\dagger c_{n\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + \frac{1}{w} \sum_{j \in \text{NN of } i} \left[ V \sum_{\sigma} (c_{j\sigma}^\dagger c_{i\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) \right. \right. \\ &\quad \left. \left. + J \vec{S}_i \cdot \vec{S}_j \right] \right]\end{aligned}\tag{4.1.4}$$

In the entire tight-binding term  $\sum_i \sum_{\substack{m \neq i \neq n \\ \langle m, n \rangle, \sigma}}$ , each pair will appear  $N - 2$  times, because that is the total number of sites that do not involve either  $m$  or  $n$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{H}_{\text{full}} &= -\left(\frac{U}{2} + U_b\right) \sum_i (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2 - 2t(N - 2) \sum_{\langle m, n \rangle, \sigma} (c_{m\sigma}^\dagger c_{n\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + \frac{2}{w} \sum_{\langle i, j \rangle} \left[ \sum_{\sigma} V (c_{j\sigma}^\dagger c_{i\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) \right. \\ &\quad \left. + J \vec{S}_i \cdot \vec{S}_j \right] \\ &= -\left(\frac{U}{2} + U_b\right) \sum_i (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2 - \left(2t(N - 2) - \frac{2V}{w}\right) \sum_{\langle m, n \rangle, \sigma} (c_{m\sigma}^\dagger c_{n\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + \frac{2J}{w} \sum_{\langle i, j \rangle} \vec{S}_i \cdot \vec{S}_j\end{aligned}\tag{4.1.5}$$

We end up with a Hubbard-Heisenberg model:

$$\mathcal{H}_{H-H} = -\sum_i U_H (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2 - t_H \sum_{\langle i, j \rangle, \sigma} (c_{i\sigma}^\dagger c_{j\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + J_H \sum_{\langle i, j \rangle} \vec{S}_i \cdot \vec{S}_j\tag{4.1.6}$$

The mapping between the parameters is

$$t_{H-H} = \left(2t(N - 2) - \frac{2V}{w}\right), \quad U_{H-H} = \left(\frac{U}{2} + U_b\right), \quad J_{H-H} = \frac{2J}{w}\tag{4.1.7}$$

The conclusion is that we can tile Anderson models with interacting baths into a Hubbard-Heisenberg model:

$$\sum_i \mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}}(i) = \mathcal{H}_{H-H}\tag{4.1.8}$$

## 4.2 Single-particle Green's function

We now define the Greens function operators:

$$\mathcal{G}_{H-H} = \frac{1}{\omega' - (H_{H-H} - E'_{\text{gs}})}, \quad \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(i) = \frac{1}{\omega - (\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}}(i) - E_{\text{gs}})}\tag{4.2.1}$$

Here,  $E_{\text{gs}}$  and  $\omega$  are the ground state energy and frequency scale for the auxiliary model Hamiltonian, while the primed quantities  $E'_{\text{gs}}$  and  $\omega'$  are the same quantities but for the full model  $\mathcal{H}_{H-H}$ . From the relation eq. 4.1.8 we know that while the auxiliary model is intensive, the full Hamiltonian is extensive (scales with system size). This means that we must have  $\omega' = N\omega$  and  $E'_{\text{gs}} = NE_{\text{gs}}$ . Rewriting eq. 4.1.8 in terms of the operators  $\mathcal{G}$ , we get

$$\sum_i \left( \omega + E_{\text{gs}} - \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(i) \right) = N\omega + NE_{\text{gs}} - \mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1} \implies \sum_i \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(i) = \mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1},\tag{4.2.2}$$

We will now take matrix elements of the full Greens function and obtain these matrix elements in terms of those of the auxiliary model. Let  $\{|\Phi\rangle_n\}$  be the set of eigenstates of  $\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}}$ , and  $|\Phi\rangle_0$  be the groundstate. We assume that the ground state of  $H_{H-H}$  is captured well by the auxiliary model, such that the real-space diagonal matrix element for particle propagation is obtained by sandwiching the Greens function between the states  $c_{i\sigma}^\dagger |\Phi\rangle_0$ :

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}\right)_{ii}^p \equiv \langle \Phi_0 | c_{i\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1} c_{i\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle = \frac{1}{w} \sum_j \sum_{k \in \text{NN of } j} \langle \Phi_0 | c_{i\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(j, k) c_{i\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle \quad (4.2.3)$$

The superscript  $p$  indicates that this is the particle propagation matrix element. Under the single site approximation, we ignore the hopping between multiple impurity that reside in separate instances of the auxiliary model. Therefore, the only operator  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(j)$  that affects the matrix element is  $j = i, k \in \text{NN of } i$ . Moreover, because of translation invariance, all  $k$  are equivalent.

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}\right)_{ii}^p = \frac{1}{w} w \times \langle \Phi_0 | c_{i\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(i) c_{i\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle = \langle \Phi_0 | c_{d\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d) c_{d\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle \quad (4.2.4)$$

where we have identified site  $i$  in the auxiliary model as the impurity. By inserting  $1 = \sum_n |\Phi_n\rangle \langle \Phi_n|$  on both sides of  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d)$ , we get from the spectral representation

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{ii}^p = \sum_{m,n} \langle \Phi_0 | c_{d\sigma} | \Phi_m \rangle \langle \Phi_m | \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d) | \Phi_n \rangle \langle \Phi_n | c_{d\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle = \sum_n |d_n^p|^2 \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d, \omega)\right)_{nn} \quad (4.2.5)$$

There we used the fact that since  $|\Phi_m\rangle$  are eigenstates of  $\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}}$  and hence of  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}$ , we can set  $m = n$ . We also defined  $d_n^p = \langle \Phi_n | c_{d\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle$ . The hole propagation matrix element can be obtained similarly:

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(-\omega)\right)_{ii}^h = \sum_n |d_n^h|^2 \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d, -\omega)\right)_{nn} \quad (4.2.6)$$

where  $d_n^h = \langle \Phi_n | c_{d\sigma} | \Phi_0 \rangle$ . The off-diagonal matrix elements can also be obtained similarly. The difference from the diagonal case is that only one out of the  $w$  nearest-neighbour pairs contributes to the matrix element:

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}\right)_{i,i+1}^p \equiv \langle \Phi_0 | c_{i,\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1} c_{i+1,\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle = \frac{1}{w} \langle \Phi_0 | c_{i\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(i, i+1) c_{i+1,\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle = \frac{1}{w} \langle \Phi_0 | c_{d\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d) c_{z,\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle \quad (4.2.7)$$

Here, we identify  $i+1$  as the bath zero mode  $z$  and  $i$  as the impurity  $d$ . We again define matrix elements  $z_n^p = \langle \Phi_n | c_{z\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle, z_n^h = \langle \Phi_n | c_{z\sigma} | \Phi_0 \rangle$ . Thus, the spectral representation of the matrix element is obtained as

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{i,i+1}^p = \frac{1}{w} \sum_n (d_n^p)^* z_n^p \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d, \omega)\right)_{nn} \quad (4.2.8)$$

The hole counterpart is

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(-\omega)\right)_{i,i+1}^h = \frac{1}{w} \sum_n (d_n^h)^* z_n^h \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d, -\omega)\right)_{nn} \quad (4.2.9)$$

In summary, the spectral representation of the matrix elements of the four inverse Greens operators are given by

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{ii}^p = \sum_n |d_n^p|^2 \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d, \omega)\right)_{nn}, \quad \left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(-\omega)\right)_{ii}^h = \sum_n |d_n^h|^2 \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d, -\omega)\right)_{nn} \quad (4.2.10)$$

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{i,i+1}^p = \frac{1}{w} \sum_n (d_n^p)^* z_n^p \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d, \omega)\right)_{nn}, \quad \left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(-\omega)\right)_{i,i+1}^h = \frac{1}{w} \sum_n (d_n^h)^* z_n^h \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d, -\omega)\right)_{nn} \quad (4.2.11)$$

In order to obtain the matrix elements of the Greens operators  $\mathcal{G}_{H-H}$  (as compared to its inverse), we note that we have just observed that the matrix elements of the inverse Greens operators are related to the matrix elements of another inverse operator through some coefficients. We can, therefore, use the identity

$$\left(\hat{O}\right)_{ij} = \langle i | \hat{O} | j \rangle = \sum_{m,n} \langle i | m \rangle \left(\hat{O}\right)_{mn} \langle n | j \rangle \implies \left(\hat{O}^{-1}\right)_{ij} = \sum_{m,n} \langle i | m \rangle \left(\hat{O}^{-1}\right)_{mn} \langle n | j \rangle \quad (4.2.12)$$



We can now identify  $(\hat{O}^{-1})_{mn}$  as the matrix elements of  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}$  in our expressions. Using the above relation, we can therefore write the spectral representation of the matrix elements of the Greens operators as

$$(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(\omega))_{ii}^p = \sum_n |d_n^p|^2 (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, \omega))_{nn}, \quad (\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(-\omega))_{ii}^h = \sum_n |d_n^h|^2 (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, -\omega))_{nn} \quad (4.2.13)$$

$$(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(\omega))_{i,i+1}^p = \frac{1}{w} \sum_n (d_n^p)^* z_n^p (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, \omega))_{nn}, \quad (\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(-\omega))_{i,i+1}^h = \frac{1}{w} \sum_n (d_n^h)^* z_n^h (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, -\omega))_{nn} \quad (4.2.14)$$

The Lehmann-Kallen spectral representation of the single-particle Greens functions can now be written in terms of these matrix elements. Using eq. C.1.6, we write the on-site  $((G_{H-H}(\omega))_{\text{loc}})$  and nearest neighbour  $((G_{H-H}(\omega))_{\text{n-n}})$  Greens functions as

$$\begin{aligned} (G_{H-H}(\omega))_{\text{loc}} &= (G_{H-H}(\omega))_{ii}^p - (G_{H-H}(-\omega))_{ii}^h = \sum_n \left[ |d_n^p|^2 (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, \omega))_{nn} - |d_n^h|^2 (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, -\omega))_{nn} \right] \\ (G_{H-H}(\omega))_{\text{n-n}} &= (G_{H-H}(\omega))_{i,i+1}^p - (G_{H-H}(-\omega))_{i+1,i}^h = \frac{1}{w} \sum_n \left[ (d_n^p)^* z_n^p (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, \omega))_{nn} - (z_n^h)^* d_n^h (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, -\omega))_{nn} \right] \end{aligned} \quad (4.2.15)$$

### 4.3 Spectral functions and self-energies

The momentum space Greens function can be expressed as a Fourier transform of the real space Greens functions:

$$G_{H-H}(\vec{k}, \omega) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{\vec{r}_i, \vec{r}_j} e^{i\vec{k} \cdot (\vec{r}_i - \vec{r}_j)} G_{H-H}(|\vec{r}_i - \vec{r}_j|, \omega) \quad (4.3.1)$$

where  $\vec{r}_i$  is the position vector of a particular lattice site. Because of translation invariance, the real space Greens function depends only on the relative vector between any two sites. As a result,  $|\vec{r}| = 0$  gives the local Greens function,  $|\vec{r}| = a$  gives the nearest-neighbour Greens function and so on ( $a$  being the lattice spacing). As we do not have real space Greens function that are more non-local than nearest neighbour, we will attempt to obtain momentum space Greens function from these two contributions:

$$G_{H-H}(\vec{k}, \omega) \simeq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{\vec{r}_i = \vec{r}_j} (G_{H-H}(\omega))_{\text{loc}} + \frac{1}{N} \sum_{|\vec{r}_i - \vec{r}_j| = a} e^{i\vec{k} \cdot (\vec{r}_i - \vec{r}_j)} (G_{H-H}(\omega))_{\text{n-n}} \quad (4.3.2)$$

The first summation produces a factor of  $N$ , while the second summation can be factorized into a sum over all sites (which again returns  $N$ ) and a sum over all the primitive vectors connecting any single site with all its nearest neighbours,  $\{\vec{a}_i : i \in [1, w]\}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} G_{H-H}(\vec{k}, \omega) &\simeq G_{H-H}(\omega)_{\text{loc}} + G_{H-H}(\omega)_{\text{n-n}} \sum_{i=1}^w e^{i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{a}_i} = G_{H-H}(\omega)_{\text{loc}} + G_{H-H}(\omega)_{\text{n-n}} \xi_{\vec{k}} \\ &= \sum_n \left[ \left( |d_n^p|^2 + \frac{\xi_{\vec{k}}}{w} (d_n^p)^* z_n^p \right) (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, \omega))_{nn} - \left( |d_n^h|^2 + \frac{\xi_{\vec{k}}}{w} (z_n^h)^* d_n^h \right) (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, -\omega))_{nn} \right] \end{aligned} \quad (4.3.3)$$

where we defined  $\xi_{\vec{k}} \equiv \sum_{i=1}^w e^{i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{a}_i}$ . For example, on a  $d$ -dimensional hypercubic lattice, we obtain

$$\xi_{\vec{k}} = \sum_{i=1}^d \left( e^{ik_i a_i} + e^{-ik_i a_i} \right) = 2 \sum_{i=1}^d \cos k_i a_i \quad (4.3.4)$$

On a 2D square lattice with lattice spacing  $a$ , this simplifies to

$$\begin{aligned} \xi_{\vec{q}} &= 2(\cos q_x a + \cos q_y a) \equiv \frac{-\epsilon_{\vec{q}}}{t^H}, \\ \epsilon_{\vec{q}} &= -2t^H (\cos q_x a_x + \cos q_y a_y) \end{aligned} \quad (4.3.5)$$

where  $\epsilon_{\vec{k}}$  is the tight-binding dispersion.

We can now compute the  $k$ -space spectral function  $A_H(\vec{k}, \omega)$  and the real-space local spectral function  $A_H(\vec{r} = 0, \omega)$  as

$$\begin{aligned} A_{H+H}(\vec{k}, \omega) &= -\frac{1}{\pi} \text{Im}(G_{H+H}(\vec{k}, \omega)) \\ &= -\frac{1}{\pi} \text{Im} \sum_n \left[ \left( |d_n^p|^2 + \frac{\xi_{\vec{k}}}{w} (d_n^p)^* z_n^p \right) (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, \omega))_{nn} - \left( |d_n^h|^2 + \frac{\xi_{\vec{k}}}{w} (z_n^h)^* d_n^h \right) (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, -\omega))_{nn} \right] \\ &= A_{\text{aux,dd}} + \frac{\xi_{\vec{k}}}{w} A_{\text{aux,dz}} \end{aligned} \quad (4.3.6)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} G_{\text{aux,dd}} &= \sum_n \left[ |d_n^p|^2 (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, \omega))_{nn} - |d_n^h|^2 (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, -\omega))_{nn} \right] \\ G_{\text{aux,dz}} &= \sum_n \left[ (d_n^p)^* z_n^p (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, \omega))_{nn} - (z_n^h)^* d_n^h (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, -\omega))_{nn} \right] \end{aligned} \quad (4.3.7)$$

and the spectral function  $A_{\text{aux,dd}} = -\frac{1}{\pi} \text{Im} G_{\text{aux,dd}}$ ,  $A_{\text{aux,dz}} = -\frac{1}{\pi} \text{Im} G_{\text{aux,dz}}$ . Further,

$$A_{H+H}(\vec{r} = 0, \omega) = -\frac{1}{\pi} \text{Im}(G_{H+H}(\vec{r} = 0, \omega)) = A_{\text{aux,dd}} \quad (4.3.8)$$

With the knowledge of the momentum-space Greens function  $G_{H+H}(\vec{k}, \omega)$ , we can now use Dyson's equation to calculate the self-energy for propagation of momentum excitations:

$$\Sigma(\vec{k}, \omega) = G_0(\vec{k}, \omega)^{-1} - G(\vec{k}, \omega)^{-1} \quad (4.3.9)$$

where the  $G_0(\vec{k}, \omega)^{-1} = \omega - \epsilon_{\vec{k}} = \omega + t^{H-H} \xi_{\vec{k}}$  is the inverse  $k$ -space Greens function for the appropriate non-interacting tight-binding system. Substituting this as well as the full Greens function  $G_{H+H}(\vec{k}, \omega)$  into Dyson's equation gives

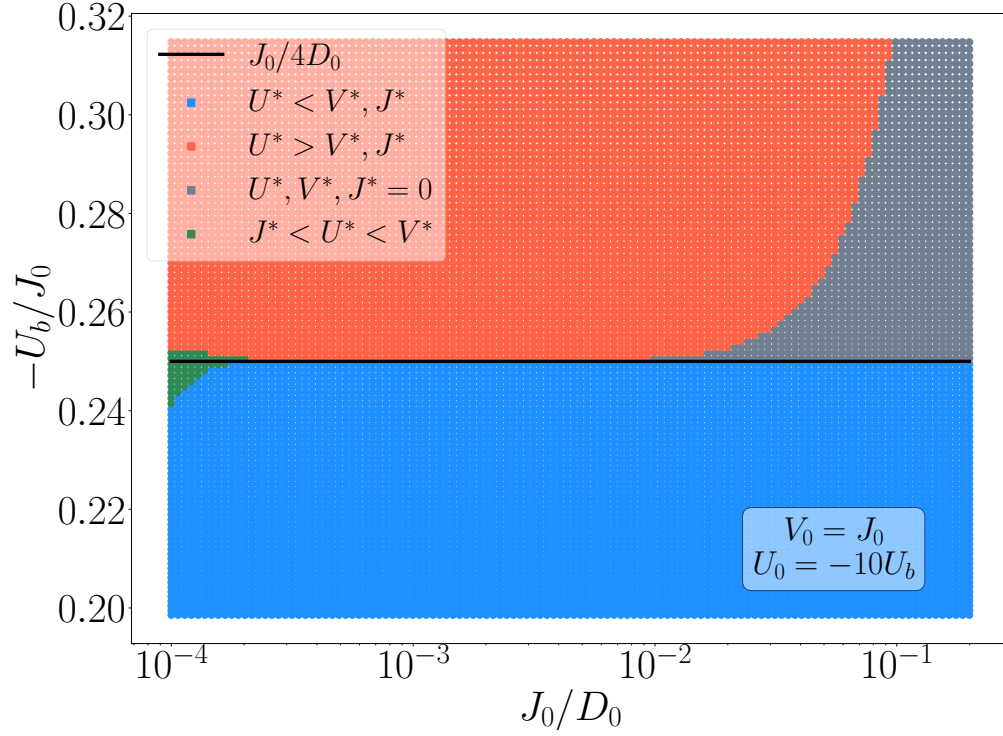
$$\begin{aligned} \Sigma_{H+H}(\vec{k}, \omega) &= \omega + t^{H-H} \xi_{\vec{k}} - \left\{ \sum_n \left[ \left( |d_n^p|^2 + \frac{\xi_{\vec{k}}}{w} (d_n^p)^* z_n^p \right) (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, \omega))_{nn} - \left( |d_n^h|^2 + \frac{\xi_{\vec{k}}}{w} (z_n^h)^* d_n^h \right) (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, -\omega))_{nn} \right] \right\}^{-1} \\ &= \omega + t^{H-H} \xi_{\vec{k}} - \left[ G_{\text{aux,dd}} + \frac{\xi_{\vec{k}}}{w} G_{\text{aux,dz}} \right]^{-1} \end{aligned} \quad (4.3.10)$$

This allows us to calculate the full self-energy  $\Sigma(\vec{k}, \omega)$  for the Hubbard model on the 2D square lattice.

## 4.4 Evidence for the Mott MIT

Through the URG study of the generalised SIAM with correlation (eq. 4.1.1) shown in chapter 3, we can conclude the following about that model:

- For  $U_b > J/4$ , the couplings  $J$  and  $V$  become irrelevant while  $U$  is relevant, which means that **the impurity gets cut off from the bath at low energies**.



- The impurity spectral function  $A_{dd}(\omega)$  and the impurity-bath real space off-diagonal Greens function  $A_{d0}(\omega)$  reveal a gap in the spectrum at low  $\omega$  for  $U_b > J/4$ . The gap in the diagonal spectral function shows that the impurity site cannot fluctuate through gapless excitations, while the vanishing of the off-diagonal spectral function shows that an electron on the impurity site cannot delocalise out of that site. Other measures like mutual information and spin-spin correlations also show a sharp change on crossing that value, demonstrating **the destruction of the Kondo cloud and the stabilisation of the local moment on the impurity**.

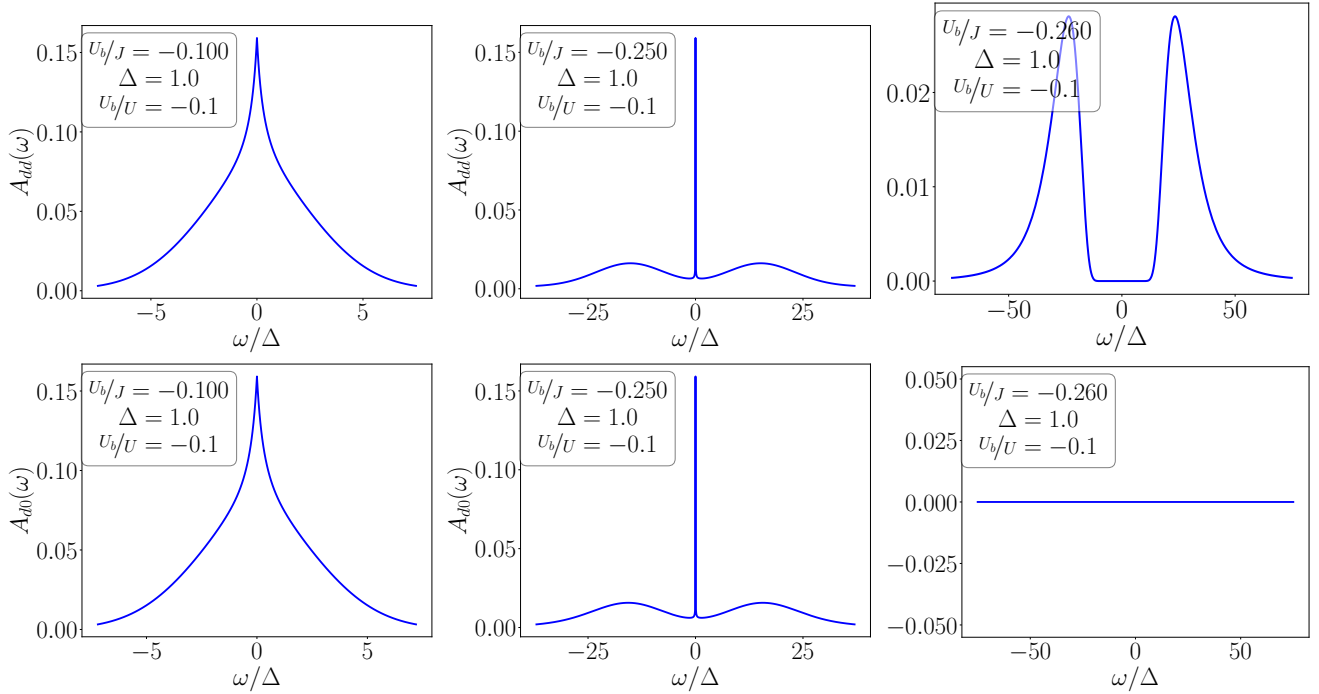


Figure 4.1: Evolution of diagonal and off-diagonal spectral functions across the transition.

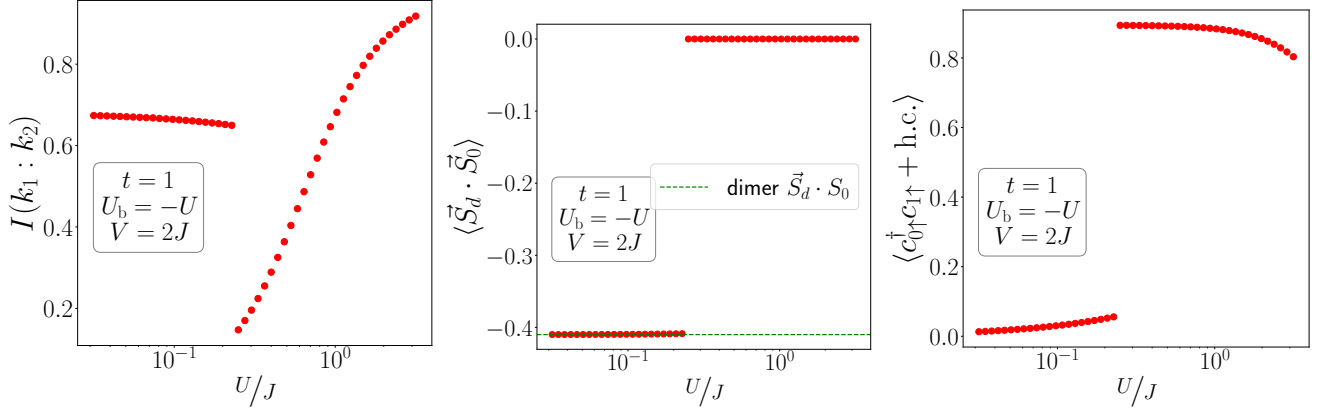


Figure 4.2: Evolution of correlation functions and mutual information across the transition.

- In the context of the auxiliary model, this represents an **impurity phase transition** from the completely-screened spin-singlet phase to the unscreened local moment phase.

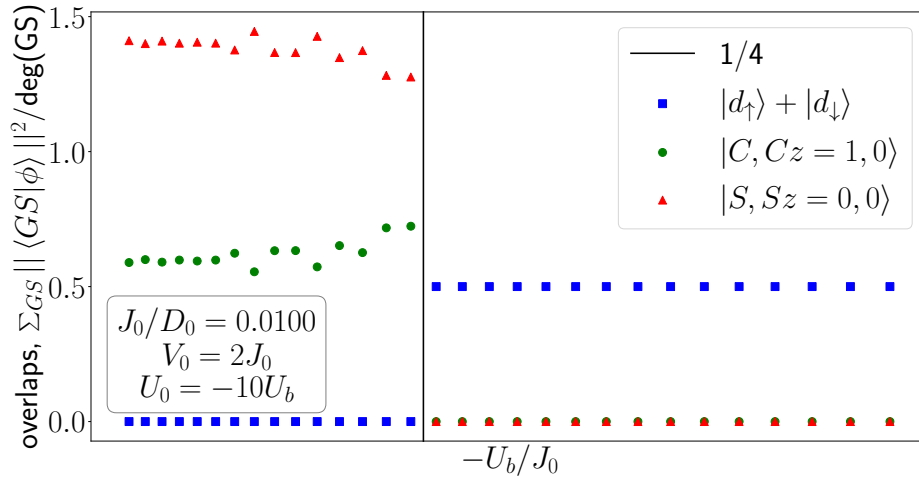


Figure 4.3: Evolution of the zero-bandwidth ground state across the transition.

Using the mappings between the auxiliary model parameters and the bulk parameters (eq. 4.1.7), one can define a critical value  $r^*$  of the ratio  $r = U_{H-H}/J_{H-H}$  at the critical points  $-U_b/J = 1/4$  for a given and fixed value of  $U$ . We will now argue that this critical point describes a metal-insulator transition. For  $r < r^*$ , the well-defined low- $\omega$  central peak in the impurity spectral function, as well as the large mutual and information correlations, in the ground state, among the members of the Kondo cloud or between the impurity and the zeroth site show that the impurity and the bath are very strongly entangled, and the weighted poles  $\left(|d_n^p|^2 + (d_n^p)^* z_n^p\right) (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, \omega))_{nn}$  and  $\left(|d_n^h|^2 + (z_n^h)^* d_n^h\right) (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, -\omega))_{nn}$  are non-zero at low  $\omega$ . This means that both the local and the nearest-neighbour Greens functions, that are related to these parameters via eq. 5.4.27, have poles at low- $\omega$  and support the propagation of electrons through gapless excitations. Since the spectral function is also very simply related to that of the auxiliary model (eq.(4.3.8)), the former also shows the same zero-energy resonance.

On the other side  $r > r^*$  of the critical point, we know that the impurity gets decoupled from the bath, such that the weighted poles  $\left(|d_n^p|^2 + (d_n^p)^* z_n^p\right) (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, \omega))_{nn}$  and  $\left(|d_n^h|^2 + (z_n^h)^* d_n^h\right) (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, -\omega))_{nn}$  vanish. This is simply the loss of spectral weight at low- $\omega$  because of the removal of the gapless excitations, and is demonstrated through both the diagonal and off-diagonal spectral functions in fig. 4.1. This then implies that the bulk Greens functions will also

gap out at low energies, and that describes an insulating phase where the electrons get "jammed" in the local states. By the same argument as above, the bulk spectral function also sees a gap in this phase when the impurity spectral function is gapped (see eq.(4.3.8)).

Finally, using eqs.(4.1.7) and the criticality condition  $U_b^* = -\frac{J^*}{4}$ , we can offer a functional form for the critical value of the parameter  $r^* = U_{H-H}^* / J_{H-H}^*$

$$r^* = \frac{U_{H-H}^*}{J_{H-H}^*} = \frac{w}{4} \left( \frac{U^*}{J^*} - \frac{1}{2} \right) \quad (4.4.1)$$

where  $U^*$  and  $J^*$  are the values of the on-site and Kondo couplings of the auxiliary model at the transition between the Kondo screened and the local moment phases. Parametrising the bath correlation coupling as  $U_b = -\frac{U}{10}$ , we obtain  $U^*/J^* = 5/2$ , and  $r^* = 2$  for the 2D square lattice Hubbard-Heisenberg model (with coordination number  $w = 4$ ). In general,  $w = 2d$  for the  $d$ -dimensional hypercubic lattice, and  $r_{\text{hyperc.}}^* = \frac{d}{2} \left( \frac{U^*}{J^*} - \frac{1}{2} \right)$ . The growth of  $r^*$  with  $d$  indicates that the MIT is increasingly rendered difficult in a higher dimensional hypercubic lattice, as it is easier for electrons to delocalise and a very large on-site repulsion is needed to overcome this.

## 4.5 Important Remarks

### 4.5.1 Greens function in the insulating phase: the Hubbard bands and mottness

In the insulating state, the cluster becomes a local moment and the bulk system reduces to the atomic limit  $H = -\frac{U}{2} \sum_i (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2$ . The Greens function in this limit is given in Appendix B.2. From eq. B.2.9, we have

$$G_i(\omega) = \sum_{\sigma} G_{i,\sigma}(\omega) = \frac{1 + \langle \tau_i \rangle}{\omega - \frac{U}{2}} + \frac{1 - \langle \tau_i \rangle}{\omega + \frac{U}{2}} \quad (4.5.1)$$

where  $\tau_i = \sum_{\sigma} \hat{n}_{i,\sigma} - 1$ . At half-filling  $\langle \tau_i \rangle = 0$ , the low and high-energy poles have equal spectral weights. *This is different from the situation in a band insulator, where the valence band has all the spectral weight in the ground state while the conduction band is empty.* On doping holes into the system such that  $\langle \tau_i \rangle = -x < 0$ , spectral weight is transferred from the upper Hubbard band at  $\omega = U/2$  to the lower one at  $\omega = -U/2$ :

$$G_i(\omega) = \sum_{\sigma} G_{i,\sigma}(\omega) = \frac{1-x}{\omega - \frac{U}{2}} + \frac{1+x}{\omega + \frac{U}{2}} \quad (4.5.2)$$

*This transfer of spectral weight across energy scales of the order of  $U$ , as well as the lack of poles at zero energies, is referred to as mottness [23].*

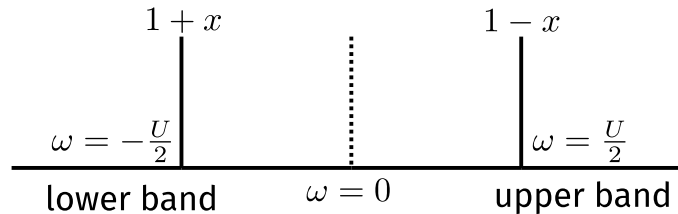


Figure 4.4: Structure of the Greens function in the atomic limit. The two poles at  $\omega = \pm \frac{U}{2}$  form the two Hubbard bands. Doping the system leads to transfer of spectral weight between the bands.

### 4.5.2 Nature of propagation: metal vs insulator

In the metallic state, the impurity in the auxiliary model hybridises with the bath through both 1-particle and 2-particle interactions. For any two auxiliary models differing by the locations  $i_1, i_2$  of the impurity, the baths will always overlap. This means

that an electron that starts out from the impurity site at  $i_1$  can hop into the bath, and eventually reach  $i_2$  by hopping out of the other bath and into the other impurity. Such processes connect all sites of the lattice and *allow spectral flow*.

In the insulating state, each auxiliary model separates into an impurity and a bath that decoupled from each other. This means that the impurity cannot hybridise into the bath, and hence cannot tunnel into any other impurity. This leads to the atomic limit of the system, where each site develops a local moment configuration because of the repulsive local correlation, but these local moments cannot communicate with each other, either through spin-exchange processes or by breaking into holons and doublons. Any attempt at spectral flow fails because the boundaries of the system become disconnected from each other.

A more accurate picture of the insulating and metallic phases can be obtained by working with a more complicated choice of the cluster. For instance, instead of a single impurity, one can take two correlated impurities interacting with each other through a single-particle hopping, and this cluster then interacts with the bath through the usual interactions. The ground state of such a cluster is actually a quantum liquid, consisting of the entangled spin and charge degrees of freedom. In the metallic state, various members of this liquid such as the holons, doublons and the spinons are free to propagate across the system through the baths. In the insulating state, it is this cluster that then gets decoupled from the other clusters. The composite degrees of freedom are then unable to propagate outside the cluster, and *the holons and the doublons are bound to each other* [1] within the confines of the cluster.

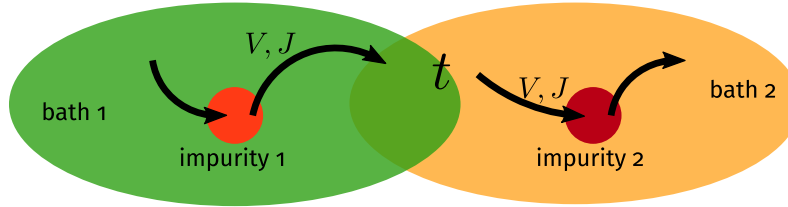


Figure 4.5: Propagation of electrons from one cluster to another through the bath, in the metallic state

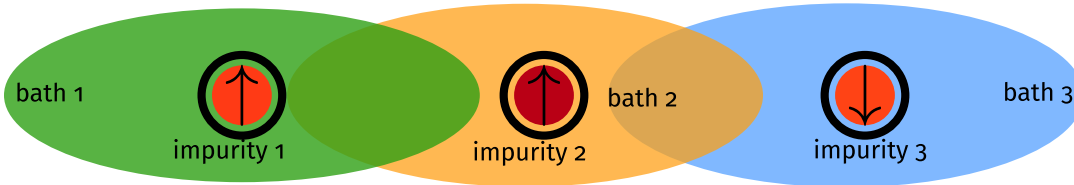


Figure 4.6: The clusters get isolated from each other in the insulator, because they get decoupled from their baths.

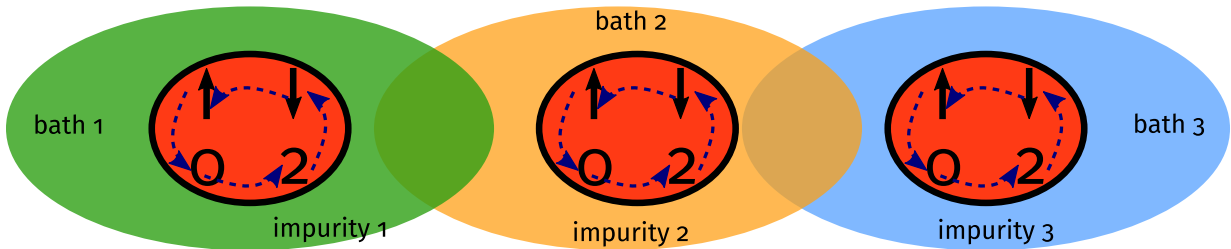


Figure 4.7: Each cluster is a quantum liquid composed of spin ( $\uparrow, \downarrow$ ) and charge (0, 2) degrees of freedom. In the insulating state, these degrees of freedom get bound within the cluster and are unable to propagate outside.

### Presence of two self-energies under symmetry-breaking

The effective Hamiltonian that describes either the metallic or the insulating phase has  $SU(2)$  symmetry in both the spin and charge sectors. Since the repulsive correlation on the impurity picks out the spin sector, we focus on that for now. Applying a small magnetic field on the impurity breaks this spin-rotation symmetry and picks out either the up or the down state on the impurity, leading to two kinds of self-energies, one for each spin state [24, 25]. The Hamiltonian has the form

$H(h)_i = -\frac{U}{2} (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2 - h (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})$ . The unique groundstate is  $|\hat{n}_{i,\sigma=\text{sgn}(h)} = 1, \hat{n}_{i,\sigma=-\text{sgn}(h)} = 0\rangle$ , with an energy of  $E_{\text{gs}} = -\frac{U}{2} - h$ . The Greens function is easiest to obtain from the Lehmann-Kallen representation (eq. D.0.9):

$$G_{i,\sigma} = \sum_n \left[ |\langle \text{GS} | c_{i\sigma} | n \rangle|^2 \frac{1}{\omega + E_{\text{GS}} - E_n} + |\langle n | c_{i\sigma} | \text{GS} \rangle|^2 \frac{1}{\omega - E_{\text{GS}} + E_n} \right] \quad (4.5.3)$$

We have  $c_{i,\sigma} |\text{GS}\rangle = |\hat{n}_i = 0\rangle \delta_{\sigma,\text{sgn}(h)}$  and  $c_{i,\sigma}^\dagger |\text{GS}\rangle = |\hat{n}_i = 2\rangle \delta_{\sigma,-\text{sgn}(h)}$ , so that the only excited states that give non-zero inner product is  $|n\rangle = |\hat{n}_i = 0\rangle$  for the second term and  $|n\rangle = |\hat{n}_i = 2\rangle$  for the first term, with energies  $E_n = 0$ . Substituting these, we get

$$G_{i,\sigma}(h) = \frac{\delta_{\sigma,-\text{sgn}(h)}}{\omega - \frac{U}{2} - h} + \frac{\delta_{\sigma,\text{sgn}(h)}}{\omega + \frac{U}{2} + h} = \frac{1}{\omega + \left(\frac{U}{2} + h\right) \sigma \times \text{sgn}(h)} \quad (4.5.4)$$

Taking the limit of  $h \rightarrow 0^\pm$  then gives

$$G_{i,\sigma}(h = 0^\pm) = \frac{1}{\omega \pm \frac{U}{2} \sigma} \quad (4.5.5)$$

The self-energies arising from the correlation  $U$  can also be obtained using Dyson's equation  $\Sigma = G^{-1} - G_0^{-1}$ , where  $G_0^{-1} = \omega$  is the Greens function at  $U = 0$ . Using Dyson's equation, we get

$$\Sigma_{i,\sigma} = \pm \frac{U}{2} \sigma \quad (4.5.6)$$

## 4.6 Analytic consistency check - On the Bethe lattice

One can apply a test to this method: it involves considering the case of infinite number of nearest-neighbours  $w \rightarrow \infty$  (the coordination number, and effectively the dimension). Here, as has been argued in the DMFT literature, the correct scaling of the  $t^H$  hopping parameter is  $t^H \rightarrow t^H / \sqrt{w}$  such that the kinetic energy of the associated tight-binding lattice model is finite. This allows for the competition between the kinetic and potential terms of the Hamiltonian to drive a metal-insulator transition in the limit of  $w \rightarrow \infty$  as well. Further, it has been argued in the DMFT literature that the Greens function matrix of the Hubbard model on the Bethe lattice with  $w \rightarrow \infty$  becomes purely local (i.e., it has vanishing inter-site matrix elements). We can also see this from eqs.(5.4.14)- the nearest-neighbour inverse Greens function vanishes in the limit of  $w \rightarrow \infty$ :

$$(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(\omega))_{ij}^\sigma = \frac{1}{w} \sum_n (d_n^p)^* z_n^p (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d, \omega))_{nn} \implies \lim_{w \rightarrow \infty} (\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(\omega))_{ij}^\sigma \rightarrow 0 \quad (4.6.1)$$

There we used the fact since at half-filling on an  $SU(2)$  symmetric model, we expect  $\langle \hat{n}_{i\uparrow} \rangle = \frac{1}{2}$ , the orthonormal expansion of  $c_{i\sigma}^\dagger |\Phi_0\rangle = \sum_n d_n^p |\Phi_n\rangle$  and  $c_{i+1,\sigma}^\dagger |\Phi_0\rangle = z_n^p |\Phi_n\rangle$  are constrained such that  $\sum_n |d_n^p|^2 = \sum_n |z_n^p|^2 = \frac{1}{2}$ , so that the only term that scales with  $w$  is  $w$  itself. This result then implies that  $G^{H-H}$  matrix has no  $k$  dependence.

In this limit, the self-energy also simplifies:

$$\lim_{w \rightarrow \infty} \Sigma_H(\vec{k}, \omega) = \omega + t^{H-H} \xi_{\vec{k}} - \left\{ \sum_n \left[ |d_n^p|^2 (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, \omega))_{nn} - |d_n^h|^2 (\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(d, -\omega))_{nn} \right] \right\}^{-1} \quad (4.6.2)$$

We can now see that even in the limit of  $w \rightarrow \infty$ , the competition between  $g_0$  (the on-site repulsion) and the hopping related kinetic energy ( $t^H \xi_{\vec{k}}$ ) can lead to a metal-insulator transition.

## Chapter 5

# Going to larger clusters - the two site approach

### 5.1 Why expand the cluster?

The previous chapter dealt with treating the Hubbard-Heisenberg model using an auxiliary model that has a single-site cluster:

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}} = \sum_{k\sigma} \epsilon_k \tau_{k\sigma} - \frac{U}{2} (\hat{n}_{d\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{d\downarrow})^2 + \sum_{k\sigma} (V_k c_{k\sigma}^\dagger c_{d\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + J \vec{S}_d \cdot \vec{s}_0 - U_b (\hat{n}_{0\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{0\downarrow})^2 \quad (5.1.1)$$

This was able to describe an impurity phase transition from screened strong-coupling phase to local moment weak coupling phase, upon tuning  $U_b/J$ . This then leads to a metal-insulator transition in the bulk, owing to the relations between the Greens functions and spectral functions obtained earlier. The single-site nature of the cluster (there was only a single impurity) has the following consequences:

1. The  $k$ -space self-energy of the bath has only minimal  $k$ -dependence arising from nearest-neighbour non-locality between the impurity and the zeroth site of the bath.
2. The local moment phase (which reduces to a set of decoupled clusters) becomes just the atomic limit, because each cluster has just one impurity.

In this chapter, we will improve on these two points by considering a larger cluster that has two impurities interacting with each other:

$$H_{\text{aux}} = \sum_{i=1,2} \left[ -\frac{U}{2} (\hat{n}_{d_i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{d_i\downarrow})^2 + V \sum_{\sigma} (c_{d_i\sigma}^\dagger c_{0_i\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + J \vec{S}_{d_i} \cdot \vec{s}_{0_i} - U_b (\hat{n}_{0_i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{0_i\downarrow})^2 \right] - t \sum_{\sigma} (c_{d_1,\sigma}^\dagger c_{d_2,\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + \sum_{k\sigma} \epsilon_k \tau_{k\sigma} \quad (5.1.2)$$

$d_1$  and  $d_2$ , or  $d_i$  in general, represent the two impurity sites in the dimer. They interact with each other through the same hopping parameter  $t$  as the bath. Each of the impurities has its own correlation  $U$  and hybridisation with the bath through  $V$  and  $J$ . Each impurity site  $d_i$  couples with a bath site  $0_i$ .  $0_1$  and  $0_2$  are assumed to be adjacent to each other, connected by the hopping  $t$ . The setup is shown in fig. 5.1.

Note that this chapter only sets out the relations between such an auxiliary model and the corresponding bulk model (in this case, a Hubbard-Heisenberg), but does not describe the physics of this new auxiliary model. That requires performing a renormalisation group calculation for  $H_{\text{aux}}$ , and that will be provided at a later point in time.

### 5.2 Solution of the Hubbard dimer using the Anderson molecule

This section tries to see how far we can go if we just work with the Anderson molecule as the smallest unit of tiling. We will attempt to reproduce the entire spectrum of a Hubbard dimer by creating a new Hamiltonian made up purely of Anderson molecules. This will guide us in deciding how to generalize the "tiling method" for a general  $N$ -site Hubbard model, as well as give indications as to whether we need a different smallest unit for tiling.



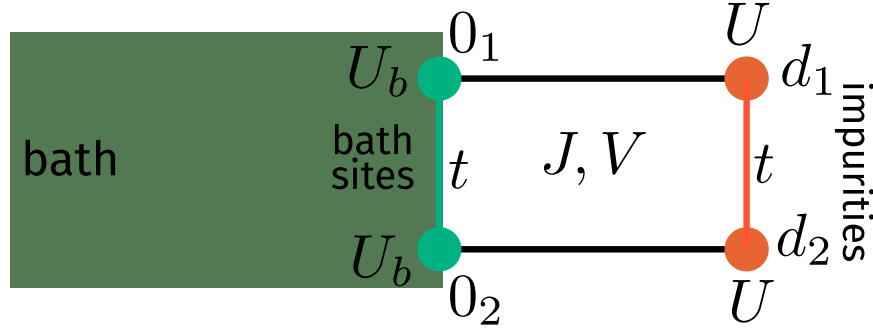


Figure 5.1: Two-impurity SIAM hybridising with a bath

The Hubbard dimer and Anderson molecules (zero-mode) are defined by the following respective Hamiltonians:

$$\begin{aligned}
 H^H &= -t^H \sum_{\sigma} (c_{1\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{2\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + U^H \sum_{i=1,2} \hat{n}_{i\uparrow} \hat{n}_{i\downarrow} - \mu^H \sum_{\sigma, i=1,2} \hat{n}_{i\sigma} \\
 H^A &= -t^A \sum_{\sigma} (c_{d\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{z\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + \epsilon_d^A \sum_{\sigma} \hat{n}_{d\sigma} + U^A \hat{n}_{d\uparrow} \hat{n}_{d\downarrow}
 \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.1}$$

In the first Hamiltonian, the indices  $i = 1, 2$  refer to the two lattice sites that constitute the dimer. In the second Hamiltonian, the subscript  $d$  indicates the impurity site, while the subscript  $z$  indicates the zero-mode site. First, we will assume that the Hubbard dimer is at half-filling ( $\frac{1}{2}U^H = \mu^H$ ):

$$\begin{aligned}
 H^H &= -t^H \sum_{\sigma} (c_{1\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{2\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + U^H \sum_{i=1,2} \hat{\tau}_{i\uparrow} \hat{\tau}_{i\downarrow} + \left( \frac{1}{2}U^H - \mu^H \right) \sum_{\sigma, i=1,2} \hat{n}_{i\sigma} + \text{constant} \\
 &= -t^H \sum_{\sigma} (c_{1\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{2\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + U^H \sum_{i=1,2} \hat{\tau}_{i\uparrow} \hat{\tau}_{i\downarrow}
 \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.2}$$

Since the Hubbard Hamiltonian is at half-filling, we will also place the impurity at half-filling by setting  $\epsilon_d^A = -\frac{1}{2}U^A$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
 H^A &= -t^A \sum_{\sigma} (c_{d\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{z\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + \left( \epsilon_d^A + \frac{1}{2}U^A \right) \sum_{\sigma} \hat{\tau}_{d\sigma} + U^A \hat{\tau}_{d\uparrow} \hat{\tau}_{d\downarrow} + \text{constant} \\
 &= -t^A \sum_{\sigma} (c_{d\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{z\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + U^A \hat{\tau}_{d\uparrow} \hat{\tau}_{d\downarrow}
 \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.3}$$

The first step is to recreate the Hubbard dimer Hamiltonian eq. 5.2.2 using the Anderson molecule Hamiltonian eq. 5.2.3:

$$\begin{aligned}
 H^H &= -t^H \sum_{\sigma} (c_{1\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{2\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + U^H \sum_{i=1,2} \hat{\tau}_{i\uparrow} \hat{\tau}_{i\downarrow} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ -t^H \sum_{\sigma} (c_{1\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{2\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + t^H \sum_{\sigma} (c_{2\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{1\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) \right] + \frac{1}{2} 2U^H \sum_{i=1,2} \hat{\tau}_{i\uparrow} \hat{\tau}_{i\downarrow} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ -t^A \sum_{\sigma} (c_{d\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{z\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) \Big|_{\substack{z \rightarrow 2, d \rightarrow 1 \\ t^A \rightarrow t^H}} + t^A \sum_{\sigma} (c_{2\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{1\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) \Big|_{\substack{d \rightarrow 2, z \rightarrow 1 \\ t^A \rightarrow t^H}} \right] \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{2} \left( U^A \hat{\tau}_{i\uparrow} \hat{\tau}_{i\downarrow} \Big|_{\substack{d \rightarrow 1 \\ U^A \rightarrow 2U^H}} + U^A \hat{\tau}_{i\uparrow} \hat{\tau}_{i\downarrow} \Big|_{\substack{d \rightarrow 2 \\ U^A \rightarrow 2U^H}} \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ H^A (t^A \rightarrow t^H, U^A \rightarrow 2U^H, d \rightarrow 1, z \rightarrow 2) + H^A (t^A \rightarrow t^H, U^A \rightarrow 2U^H, d \rightarrow 2, z \rightarrow 1) \right]
 \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.4}$$

The conclusion we can draw from this is that the Hubbard dimer Hamiltonian can be obtained from the Anderson dimer Hamiltonian in the following fashion:

- The essential idea is that we have to create a local Hubbard Hamiltonian for each site of the Hubbard lattice by replacing the impurity label  $d$  in the Anderson dimer with the label of the particular site. So if there are two sites, we will get two local Hamiltonians obtained by replacing  $d$  with 1 and 2 respectively. For each local Hamiltonian, the zero-mode label  $z$  is replaced by the site that is nearest to the one that  $d$  is being replaced by. So, if  $d \rightarrow 1(2)$ , then  $z \rightarrow 2(1)$ .
- This, however, is not the only change that we must make, in order to get the local Hamiltonian for a particular site. Along with  $d$  and  $z$ , we must also make the transformations  $t^A \rightarrow t^H, U^A \rightarrow 2U^H$ .
- Finally, once we have the local Hamiltonians for sites 1 and 2, we average them to get the total Hubbard Hamiltonian.

Note that we expect most of these "rules" to be specific for the dimer, and there will be generalizations to most of them for a general  $N$ -site Hubbard Hamiltonian.

The wavefunctions for the  $N = 2$  sector can also be connected through these transformations. Since both the Hamiltonians are analytically solvable, we can write down their groundstate wavefunctions [CITE PAVARINI]:

$$\begin{aligned}
 |\Psi_{\text{GS}}^H\rangle &= a_1(U^H, t^H) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow_1, \downarrow_2\rangle - |\downarrow_1, \uparrow_2\rangle) - a_2(U^H, t^H) \sqrt{2} (|\uparrow_1 \downarrow_1\rangle - |\uparrow_2 \downarrow_2\rangle) \\
 |\Psi_{\text{GS}}^A\rangle &= a_1\left(\frac{1}{2}U^A, t^A\right) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow_d, \downarrow_z\rangle - |\downarrow_d, \uparrow_z\rangle) - a_2\left(\frac{1}{2}U^A, t^A\right) \sqrt{2} (|\uparrow_d \downarrow_d\rangle - |\uparrow_z \downarrow_z\rangle) \\
 E_{\text{GS}}^H &= -\frac{1}{2}\Delta(U^H, t^H), E_{\text{GS}}^A = -\frac{1}{2}\Delta\left(\frac{1}{2}U^A, t^A\right)
 \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.5}$$

where

$$a_1(U, t) \equiv \frac{4t}{\sqrt{2\Delta(U, t) (\Delta(U, t) - U)}}, \quad a_2(U, t) \equiv \sqrt{\frac{\Delta(U, t) - U}{2\Delta(U, t)}}, \quad \Delta(U, t) \equiv \sqrt{U^2 + 16t^2} \tag{5.2.6}$$

$a_1, a_2$  satisfy  $a_1(-U, t) = -a_2(U, t)$  and  $a_1(U, t)a_2(U, t) = \frac{2t}{\Delta(U, t)}$ . From the forms of the wavefunctions and eigenenergies, we can immediately write down

$$\begin{aligned}
 |\Psi_{\text{GS}}^H\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ |\Psi_{\text{GS}}^A\rangle (t^A, U^A \rightarrow t^H, 2U^H, d \rightarrow 1, z \rightarrow 2) + |\Psi_{\text{GS}}^A\rangle (t^A, U^A \rightarrow t^H, 2U^H, d \rightarrow 2, z \rightarrow 1) \right] \\
 E_{\text{GS}}^H &= E_{\text{GS}}^A(t^A, U^A \rightarrow t^H, 2U^H)
 \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.7}$$

This shows that the rules laid out before work for the Hamiltonians, as well as the wavefunctions and energy eigenvalues of the  $N = 2, 0, 4$  sector. These sectors specifically work because it is only in these sectors can we ensure that  $n_d = n_z$ , which is required for the Hubbard Hamiltonian because  $n_1 = n_2$ . In the other sectors ( $N = 1, 3$ ), the impurity site and the zero-mode sites have to be singly-occupied in some part, and since the impurity site incurs a single-occupation cost of  $-\frac{U^H}{2}$  which is not borne by the zero-mode site, there is an intrinsic dissimilarity between the two sites of the Anderson molecule in this regime. This dissimilarity does not exist for the Hubbard model, so we cannot hope to connect the two models in this regime. Going forward, we will switch to using Hubbard dimers as the smallest tiling unit for a general Hubbard model.

### 5.3 Creating $N$ -site Hubbard Hamiltonian from Hubbard dimer embedded in a bath

Similar to the previous chapter, we will now tile the lattice with the two-site auxiliary model

$$\begin{aligned}
 H_{\text{aux}} = \sum_{i=1,2} \left[ -\frac{U}{2} (\hat{n}_{d_i \uparrow} - \hat{n}_{d_i \downarrow})^2 + V \sum_{\sigma} (c_{d_i \sigma}^\dagger c_{0_i \sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + J \vec{S}_{d_i} \cdot \vec{S}_{0_i} - U_b (\hat{n}_{0_i \uparrow} - \hat{n}_{0_i \downarrow})^2 \right] \\
 - t \sum_{\sigma} (c_{d_1, \sigma}^\dagger c_{d_2, \sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + \sum_{k\sigma} \epsilon_k \tau_{k\sigma}
 \end{aligned} \tag{5.3.1}$$

For concreteness, we will consider a lattice of  $N$  lattice sites and  $w$  nearest neighbours for each site. Note that a uniform number of nearest neighbours means that there is perfect translational invariance on the lattice, which means there cannot be any edge sites. This is achieved by applying periodic boundary conditions on the edges of the lattice. For example, a square 2d lattice will have to be placed on a 2-torus.

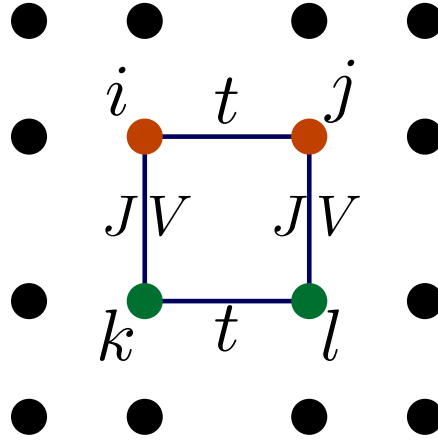


Figure 5.2: Placing the impurity and bath sites  $d_i, 0_i$  on a chosen square of the lattice. The chosen square is marked in blue, the impurity sites in orange and the bath sites in green.

The first step is to identify the two impurity sites  $d_1$  and  $d_2$  and the two bath sites  $0_1$  and  $0_2$  as sitting on a square arrangement of the lattice.  $d_i$  form one arm of the square, while  $0_i$  form the opposite arm. This square arrangement is shown in fig. 5.2, and is dictated by the auxiliary model chosen and shown in fig. 5.1. The sites at the vertices of the square are labelled as  $i, j, k, l$ . With this identification, the Hamiltonian becomes

$$H_{\text{aux}}(i, j, k, l) = \sum_{i=1,2} \left[ -\frac{U}{2} (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2 - \frac{U}{2} (\hat{n}_{j\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{j\downarrow})^2 + V \sum_{\sigma} (c_{i\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{k\sigma} + \text{h.c.} + c_{j\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{l\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + J \vec{S}_i \cdot \vec{s}_k \right. \\ \left. + J \vec{S}_j \cdot \vec{s}_l - U_b (\hat{n}_{k\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{k\downarrow})^2 - U_b (\hat{n}_{l\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{l\downarrow})^2 \right] - t \sum_{\sigma} (c_{i,\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{j,\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) - t \sum_{\langle m,n \rangle, \sigma}^{m,n \notin \{i,j\}} (c_{m\sigma}^{\dagger} c_{n\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) \quad (5.3.2)$$

As before, the kinetic energy part sums over all nearest neighbour pairs that involve neither  $i$  nor  $j$ . For a given arm  $i - j$ , the square can be rotated along the axis  $i - j$  to give one square arrangements for each dimension perpendicular to the axis along  $i - j$ . Since there are  $w/2$  dimensions, the number of such squares is  $w/2 - 1$ . For each such square, we can obtain another square by reflecting the square in the plane of  $i - j - l - k - i$  and across the line  $i - j$ . The total number of squares is therefore  $w - 2$ . The upshot is that given  $i - j$ , there are multiple ways of choosing  $k$ ; if  $\{\vec{a}\}$  represents the set of  $w$  primitive vectors that connect a particular lattice site to its nearest neighbours,  $k$  can be situated at all  $\vec{r}_i + \vec{a}$  for which  $\vec{a} \times (\vec{r}_j - \vec{r}_i) \neq 0$ . Choosing  $k$  then automatically fixes  $l$  at  $\vec{r}_j + \vec{a}$ . The condition  $\vec{a} \times (\vec{r}_j - \vec{r}_i) \neq 0$  simply means we only take those  $\vec{a}$  that are perpendicular to  $\vec{r}_j - \vec{r}_i$ . Since there are  $w$  number of  $\vec{a}$  in total and 2 of them are parallel, the total number of choices of  $k, l$  is  $w - 2$ . For a 2D lattice, we have  $w = 4$ , so there are only two possible choices of the square. They are shown in fig. 5.3.

The Hamiltonian for an arm  $i - j$  is then obtained by averaging over these squares:

$$H_{\text{aux}}(i, j) = \frac{1}{w-2} \sum_{\substack{\vec{a} \times (\vec{r}_j - \vec{r}_i) \neq 0 \\ \vec{r}_k = \vec{r}_i + \vec{a} \\ \vec{r}_l = \vec{r}_j + \vec{a}}} H_{\text{aux}}(i, j, k, l) \quad (5.3.3)$$

The final step is to sum over all nearest neighbour arms  $i - j$ :

$$H_{\text{full}} = \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \frac{1}{w-2} \sum_{\substack{\vec{a} \times (\vec{r}_j - \vec{r}_i) \neq 0 \\ \vec{r}_k = \vec{r}_i + \vec{a} \\ \vec{r}_l = \vec{r}_j + \vec{a}}} H_{\text{aux}}(i, j, k, l) \quad (5.3.4)$$

There are four kinds of terms:

- the first kind,  $A(i), A(j)$ , depend only on either  $i$  or  $j$ . They can be summed over easily by noting that the internal summation gives a constant factor of  $w - 2$  which is canceled by the factor of  $1/(w - 2)$  in the front, and the external summation gives  $\sum_{i,j} A(i) = \frac{w}{2} \sum_i A(i)$ , because  $i$  is a member of  $w/2$  distinct nearest-neighbour pairs.

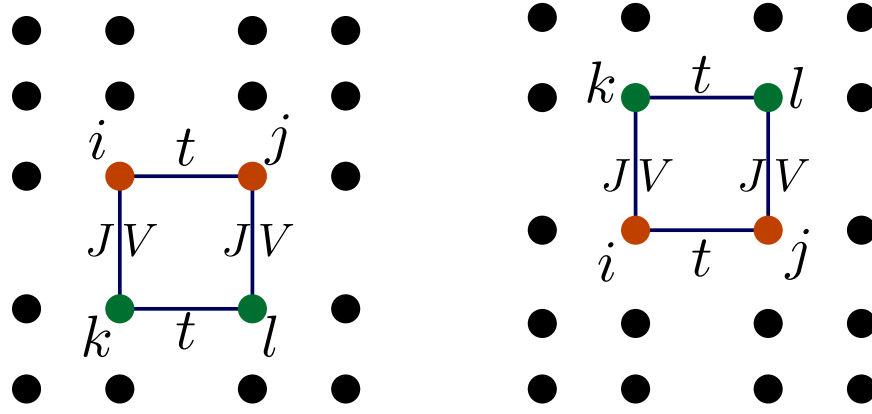


Figure 5.3: Placing the impurity and bath sites  $d_i, 0_i$  on a chosen square of the lattice. The chosen square is marked in blue, the impurity sites in orange and the bath sites in green.

- The second kind,  $B(i, j)$  depends on both  $i$  and  $j$ . The internal summation is again cancelled by the prefactor. The external summation simply sums over all nearest-neighbour values of  $A(i, j)$ .
- The third kind,  $C(i, k), C(j, l)$ , depend on  $i$  and  $k$ . Here, the total summation  $\sum_{i,j,k} C(i, k)$  gives  $(w-2) \sum_{\langle i,k \rangle} (C(i, k) + C(k, i))$ , because the pair  $(i, k)$  occurs  $w - 2$  times corresponding to the  $w - 2$  vectors  $\vec{r}_j - \vec{r}_i$  that are perpendicular to  $\vec{r}_i - \vec{r}_k$ . The factor is again cancelled by the existing prefactor.
- The fourth kind,  $D(k), D(l), E(k, l)$ , depend on just  $k$ , just  $l$  or both  $k$  and  $l$ . For each pair  $i - j$  in the external summation, the particular pair  $k - l$  appears only once. When  $i - j$  is summed over, a factor of  $2(w/2 - 1)$  is generated because there are that many squares that involve  $k - l$ . This factor cancels the inverse factor in front, giving  $\sum_{\langle k \rangle} D(k), \sum_{\langle k,l \rangle} E(k, l)$ .

The full Hamiltonian reads

$$\begin{aligned}
 H_{\text{full}} &= w \sum_i \left[ -\frac{U}{2} (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2 \right] - t \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle, \sigma} (c_{i\sigma}^\dagger c_{j\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) + 4V \sum_{\sigma, \langle i,k \rangle} (c_{i\sigma}^\dagger c_{k\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) \\
 &\quad + 4J \sum_{\langle i,k \rangle} (\vec{S}_i \cdot \vec{S}_k) - 2U_b \sum_k (\hat{n}_{k\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{k\downarrow})^2 - \frac{Nw/2}{w-2} t \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle, \sigma} (c_{i\sigma}^\dagger c_{j\sigma} + \text{h.c.}) \\
 &= -\frac{1}{2} (Uw + 4U_b) \sum_i (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2 - \left( \frac{Nw/2}{w-2} t + t - 4V \right) \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle, \sigma} (c_{i\sigma}^\dagger c_{j\sigma}) + 4J \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \vec{S}_i \cdot \vec{S}_j
 \end{aligned} \tag{5.3.5}$$

The bulk model hence obtained is again a Hubbard-Heisenberg model. In eq. 5.3.6, the total number of terms in the outer summation is  $Nw/2$ . In order to make sure that this full Hamiltonian scales as  $N$ , we divide this by  $w/2$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
 H_{\text{full}} &= \frac{2}{w} \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} H_{\text{aux}}(i, j) = \frac{2}{w} \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \frac{1}{w-2} \sum_{\substack{\vec{r}_k = \vec{r}_i + \vec{a} \\ \vec{r}_l = \vec{r}_j + \vec{a}}}^{\vec{a} \times (\vec{r}_j - \vec{r}_i) \neq 0} H_{\text{aux}}(i, j, k, l) \\
 &= -\frac{1}{2} (2U + 8U_b/w) \sum_i (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2 - \left( \frac{N}{w-2} t + 2t/w - 8V/w \right) \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle, \sigma} (c_{i\sigma}^\dagger c_{j\sigma}) + 8J/w \sum_{\langle i,j \rangle} \vec{S}_i \cdot \vec{S}_j
 \end{aligned} \tag{5.3.6}$$

The mappings between the parameters of the auxiliary model and the bulk are

$$t_{\text{HH}} = \left( \frac{N}{w-2} t + 2t/w - 8V/w \right), \quad U_{\text{HH}} = 2U + 8U_b/w, \quad J_{\text{HH}} = 8J/w \tag{5.3.7}$$

## 5.4 Single-particle Green's function

We now define the Greens function operators:

$$\mathcal{G}_{H-H} = \frac{1}{\omega' - (H_{H-H} - E'_{\text{gs}})}, \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(i, j) = \frac{1}{\omega - (\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}}(i, j) - E_{\text{gs}})} \quad (5.4.1)$$

Here,  $E_{\text{gs}}$  and  $\omega$  are the ground state energy and frequency scale for the auxiliary model Hamiltonian, while the primed quantities  $E'_{\text{gs}}$  and  $\omega'$  are the same quantities but for the full model  $\mathcal{H}_{H-H}$ . While the auxiliary model is intensive, the full Hamiltonian is extensive and scales as  $N$ :

$$H_{\text{full}} = \frac{2}{w} \sum_{\langle i, j \rangle} H_{\text{aux}}(i, j) \sim N H_{\text{aux}}(d_1, d_2). \quad (5.4.2)$$

This means that we must have  $\omega' = N\omega$  and  $E'_{\text{gs}} = NE_{\text{gs}}$ . Rewriting eq. 5.3.6 in terms of the operators  $\mathcal{G}$ , we get

$$\sum_{\langle i, j \rangle} \left( \omega + E_{\text{gs}} - \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(i, j) \right) = N\omega + NE_{\text{gs}} - \mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1} \implies \sum_{\langle i, j \rangle} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(i, j) = \mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}, \quad (5.4.3)$$

We will now take matrix elements of the full Greens function and obtain these matrix elements in terms of those of the auxiliary model. Let  $\{|\Phi\rangle_n\}$  be the set of eigenstates of  $\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}}$ , and  $|\Phi\rangle_0$  be the groundstate. We assume that the ground state of  $H_{H-H}$  is captured well by the auxiliary model, such that the real-space diagonal matrix element for particle propagation is obtained by sandwiching the Greens function between the states  $c_{i\sigma}^\dagger |\Phi\rangle_0$ :

$$\left( \mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1} \right)_{ii}^p \equiv \langle \Phi_0 | c_{i\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1} c_{i\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle = \sum_{\langle k, l \rangle} \langle \Phi_0 | c_{i\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(k, l) c_{i\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle \quad (5.4.4)$$

The superscript  $p$  indicates that this is the particle propagation matrix element. Under the auxiliary model approximation, we ignore the virtual entanglement between separate clusters. Therefore, the only operators  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(k, l)$  that affect the matrix element are those that satisfy  $i \in (k, l)$ . There are  $w$  such pairs:  $\{k, l\} = \{i, j\} \forall j \in \text{NN of } i$ . Moreover, because of translation invariance, all  $j \in \text{NN of } i$  are equivalent. These configurations are shown in fig. 5.4.

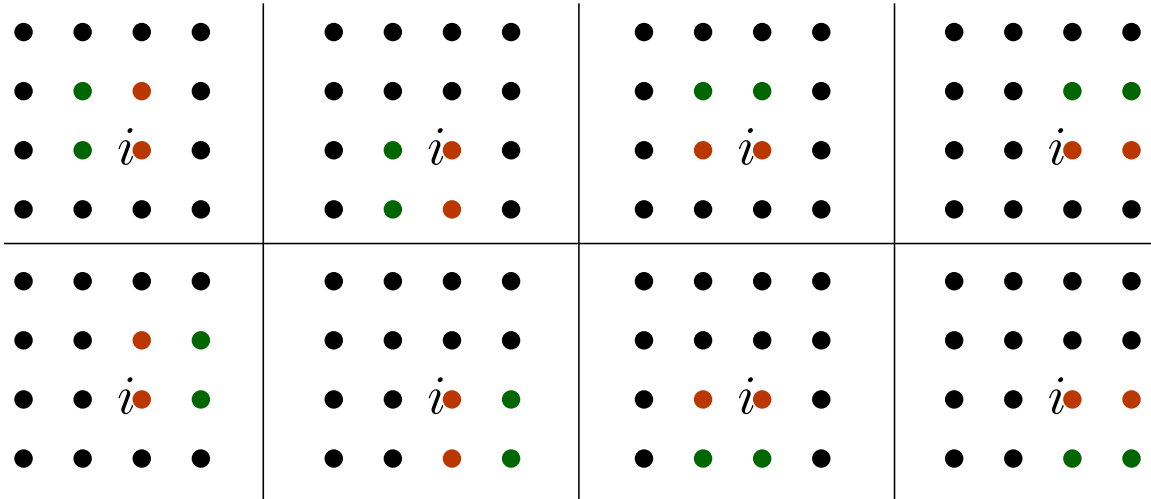


Figure 5.4: The various configurations of auxiliary models that contribute to the diagonal matrix element at site  $i$ . Orange colour represents impurities and green represents bath sites.

$$\left( \mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1} \right)_{ii}^p = \sum_{\langle k, l \rangle} \langle \Phi_0 | c_{i\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(k, l) c_{i\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle = \frac{2}{w} \times w \times \langle \Phi_0 | c_{i\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(i, i+1) c_{i\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle = 2 \langle \Phi_0 | c_{d_1\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d_1, d_2) c_{d_1\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle \quad (5.4.5)$$

where we have identified site  $i$  in the auxiliary model as one of the impurities  $d_1$ . We could very well have chosen  $d_2$  since the model is symmetric in  $d_1, d_2$ .  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d_1, d_2)$  is the Greens operator corresponding to the Hamiltonian in eq. 5.1.2.

By inserting  $1 = \sum_n |\Phi_n\rangle \langle \Phi_n|$  on both sides of  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}$ , we get from the spectral representation

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{ii}^p = 2 \sum_{m,n} \langle \Phi_0 | c_{d_1\sigma} | \Phi_m \rangle \langle \Phi_m | \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1} | \Phi_n \rangle \langle \Phi_n | c_{d_1\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle = 2 \sum_n |d_{1,n}^p|^2 \left(\mathcal{G}^{-1}(\omega)_{\text{aux}}\right)_{nn} \quad (5.4.6)$$

There we used the fact that since  $|\Phi_m\rangle$  are eigenstates of  $\mathcal{H}_{\text{aux}}$  and hence of  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}$ , we can set  $m = n$ . We also defined  $d_{i,n}^p = \langle \Phi_n | c_{d_i\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle$ . The hole propagation matrix element can be obtained similarly:

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(-\omega)\right)_{ii}^h = 2 \sum_n |d_{1,n}^h|^2 \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(-\omega)\right)_{nn} \quad (5.4.7)$$

where  $d_{i,n}^h = \langle \Phi_n | c_{d_i\sigma} | \Phi_0 \rangle$ .

The off-diagonal matrix elements between two nearest-neighbour sites  $i$  and  $i+1$  can also be obtained similarly. Several auxiliary models can contribute to such a matrix element:

- those auxiliary models that have  $i$  and  $i+1$  as the two impurities. These give the contribution  $\langle \Phi_0 | c_{d_1\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d_1, d_2) c_{d_2\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle$ .

$$\frac{2}{w} \langle \Phi_0 | c_{d_1\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d_1, d_2) c_{d_2\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle = \frac{2}{w} \sum_n \left(d_{1,n}^p\right)^* d_{2,n}^p \left(\mathcal{G}^{-1}(\omega)_{\text{aux}}\right)_{nn} \quad (5.4.8)$$

- those that have  $i$  as an impurity and  $i+1$  as the corresponding bath site. There will be  $w-2$  of these in number:

$$(w-2) \times \frac{2}{w} \frac{1}{w-2} \langle \Phi_0 | c_{d_1\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d_1, d_2) c_{0_1\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle = \frac{2}{w} \left(d_{1,n}^p\right)^* z_{1,n}^p \left(\mathcal{G}^{-1}(\omega)_{\text{aux}}\right)_{nn} \quad (5.4.9)$$

where  $z_{i,n}^p = \langle \Phi_n | c_{0_i\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle$ .

- those that have  $i+1$  as an impurity site and  $i$  as the corresponding bath site. There are again  $w-2$  of these:

$$(w-2) \times \frac{2}{w} \frac{1}{w-2} \langle \Phi_0 | c_{0_1\sigma} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d_1, d_2) c_{d_1\sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle = \frac{2}{w} \left(z_{1,n}^p\right)^* d_{1,n}^p \left(\mathcal{G}^{-1}(\omega)_{\text{aux}}\right)_{nn} \quad (5.4.10)$$

These choices are shown in fig. 5.5.

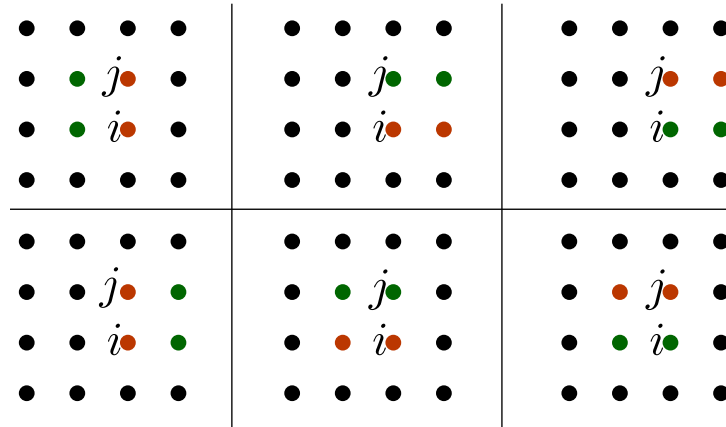


Figure 5.5: Auxiliary models that contribute to the off-diagonal matrix element.  $j \equiv i+1$

Adding all contributions gives

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{i,i+1}^p = \frac{2}{w} \sum_n \left[ \left(d_{1,n}^p\right)^* d_{2,n}^p + \left(d_{1,n}^p\right)^* z_{1,n}^p + \text{h.c.} \right] \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{nn} \quad (5.4.11)$$

The hole counterpart is

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(-\omega)\right)_{i,i+1}^h = \frac{2}{w} \sum_n \left[ \left(d_{1,n}^h\right)^* d_{2,n}^h + \left(d_{1,n}^h\right)^* z_{1,n}^h + \text{h.c.} \right] \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(-\omega)\right)_{nn} \quad (5.4.12)$$

where  $z_{i,n}^h = \langle \Phi_n | c_{z_i \sigma} | \Phi_0 \rangle$ .

The off-diagonal matrix element between next-to-nearest-neighbour sites  $i, i+2$  can also be obtained, provided their positions are related as  $\vec{r}_{i+2} = \vec{r}_i + \vec{a} + \vec{a}'$ , where  $\vec{a}$  and  $\vec{a}'$  are primitive vectors that connect any lattice site to its nearest-neighbours, and  $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{a}' = 0$ . This is shown in fig. 5.6.

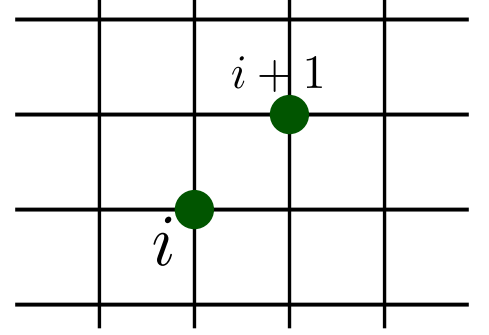


Figure 5.6: The kind of next-nearest neighbour sites that can be connected by the auxiliary model.

The essence is that the two sites have to form the two most separated vertices of a right-angled triangle. To find the auxiliary models that contribute to this matrix element, note that there is only one square that can be formed keeping both  $i$  and  $i+2$  on it - we call this square  $ABCD$ , where  $A$  is the vertex  $i$  and  $C$  is the vertex  $i+2$ . We can set  $A = d_1, C = 0_2$ . The other two vertices  $B$  and  $D$  can have two possible configurations:  $B = d_2, D = 0_1$  and  $B = 0_1, D = d_2$ . Two more configurations can be obtained by taking each of these two configurations and keeping  $B, D$  unchanged but exchanging  $A$  and  $C$ . These four configurations are shown in fig. 5.7.

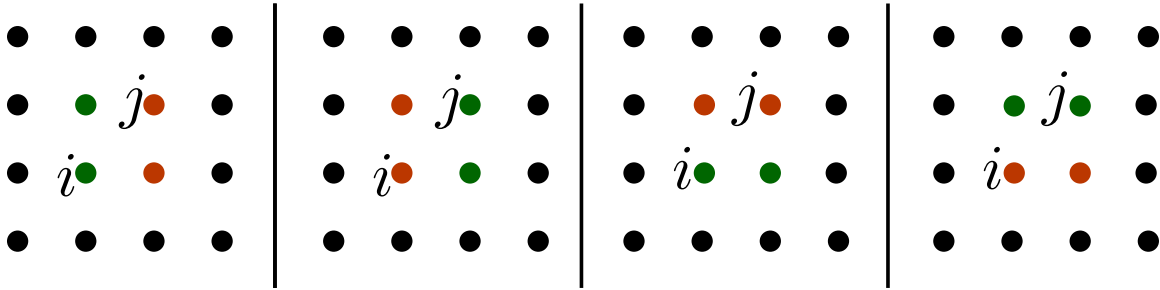


Figure 5.7: Auxiliary model configurations that contribute to the next-nearest neighbour matrix elements.  $j \equiv i+2$

These four configurations give

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{i,i+2}^p &= \frac{2}{w(w-2)} \left[ \langle \Phi_0 | c_{d_1 \sigma} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d_1, d_2) c_{0_2, \sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle + \langle \Phi_0 | c_{0_2 \sigma} \mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(d_1, d_2) c_{d_1, \sigma}^\dagger | \Phi_0 \rangle \right] \\ &= \frac{2}{w(w-2)} \sum_n \left[ \left(d_{1,n}^p\right)^* z_{2,n}^p + \left(z_{2,n}^p\right)^* d_{1,n}^p \right] \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{nn} \end{aligned} \quad (5.4.13)$$

In summary, the spectral representation of the matrix elements of the inverse Greens operators are given by

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{ii}^p = \sum_n |d_{1,n}^p|^2 \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{nn}, \quad (5.4.14)$$

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(-\omega)\right)_{ii}^h = \sum_n |d_{1,n}^h|^2 \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(-\omega)\right)_{nn}, \quad (5.4.15)$$

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{i,i+1}^p = \frac{2}{w} \sum_n \left[ \left(d_{1,n}^p\right)^* d_{2,n}^p + \left(d_{1,n}^p\right)^* z_{1,n}^p + \text{h.c.} \right] \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{nn}, \quad (5.4.16)$$

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(-\omega)\right)_{i,i+1}^h = \frac{2}{w} \sum_n \left[ \left(d_{1,n}^h\right)^* d_{2,n}^h + \left(d_{1,n}^h\right)^* z_{1,n}^h + \text{h.c.} \right] \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(-\omega)\right)_{nn}, \quad (5.4.17)$$

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{i,i+2}^p = \frac{2}{w(w-2)} \sum_n \left[ \left(d_{1,n}^p\right)^* z_{2,n}^p + \left(z_{2,n}^p\right)^* d_{1,n}^p \right] \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{nn}, \quad (5.4.18)$$

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{HH}}^{-1}(-\omega)\right)_{i,i+2}^h = \frac{2}{w(w-2)} \sum_n \left[ \left(d_{1,n}^h\right)^* z_{2,n}^h + \left(z_{2,n}^h\right)^* d_{1,n}^h \right] \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}(\omega)\right)_{nn} . \quad (5.4.19)$$

In order to obtain the matrix elements of the Greens operators  $\mathcal{G}_{H-H}$  (as compared to its inverse), we note that we have just observed that the matrix elements of the inverse Greens operators are related to the matrix elements of another inverse operator through some coefficients. We can, therefore, use the identity

$$\left(\hat{O}\right)_{ij} = \langle i | \hat{O} | j \rangle = \sum_{m,n} \langle i | m \rangle \left(\hat{O}\right)_{mn} \langle n | j \rangle \implies \left(\hat{O}^{-1}\right)_{ij} = \sum_{m,n} \langle i | m \rangle \left(\hat{O}^{-1}\right)_{mn} \langle n | j \rangle \quad (5.4.20)$$

We can now identify  $\left(\hat{O}^{-1}\right)_{mn}$  as the matrix elements of  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}^{-1}$  in our expressions. Using the above relation, we can therefore write the spectral representation of the matrix elements of the Greens operators as

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(\omega)\right)_{ii}^p = \sum_n |d_{1,n}^p|^2 \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(\omega)\right)_{nn} , \quad (5.4.21)$$

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(-\omega)\right)_{ii}^h = \sum_n |d_{1,n}^h|^2 \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(-\omega)\right)_{nn} , \quad (5.4.22)$$

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(\omega)\right)_{i,i+1}^p = \frac{2}{w} \sum_n \left[ \left(d_{1,n}^p\right)^* d_{2,n}^p + \left(d_{1,n}^p\right)^* z_{1,n}^p + \text{h.c.} \right] \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(\omega)\right)_{nn} , \quad (5.4.23)$$

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(-\omega)\right)_{i,i+1}^h = \frac{2}{w} \sum_n \left[ \left(d_{1,n}^h\right)^* d_{2,n}^h + \left(d_{1,n}^h\right)^* z_{1,n}^h + \text{h.c.} \right] \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(-\omega)\right)_{nn} , \quad (5.4.24)$$

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{HH}}(\omega)\right)_{i,i+2}^p = \frac{2}{w(w-2)} \sum_n \left[ \left(d_{1,n}^p\right)^* z_{2,n}^p + \left(z_{2,n}^p\right)^* d_{1,n}^p \right] \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(\omega)\right)_{nn} , \quad (5.4.25)$$

$$\left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{HH}}(-\omega)\right)_{i,i+2}^h = \frac{2}{w(w-2)} \sum_n \left[ \left(d_{1,n}^h\right)^* z_{2,n}^h + \left(z_{2,n}^h\right)^* d_{1,n}^h \right] \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(-\omega)\right)_{nn} . \quad (5.4.26)$$

The Lehmann-Kallen spectral representation of the single-particle Greens functions can now be written in terms of these matrix elements. Using eq. C.1.6, we write the on-site  $\left((\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(\omega))_{\text{loc}}\right)$  and nearest neighbour  $\left((\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(\omega))_{\text{n-n}}\right)$  Greens functions as

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(\omega)\right)_{\text{loc}} &= \left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(\omega)\right)_{ii}^p - \left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(-\omega)\right)_{ii}^h = \sum_n \left[ |d_{1,n}^p|^2 \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(\omega)\right)_{nn} - |d_{1,n}^h|^2 \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(-\omega)\right)_{nn} \right] = G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, d_1; \omega) \\ \left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(\omega)\right)_{\text{n-n}} &= \left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(\omega)\right)_{i,i+1}^p - \left(\mathcal{G}_{H-H}(-\omega)\right)_{i+1,i}^h \\ &= \frac{2}{w} \sum_n \left\{ \left[ \left(d_{1,n}^p\right)^* d_{2,n}^p + \left(d_{1,n}^p\right)^* z_{1,n}^p + \text{h.c.} \right] \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(\omega)\right)_{nn} - \left[ \left(d_{1,n}^h\right)^* d_{2,n}^h + \left(d_{1,n}^h\right)^* z_{1,n}^h + \text{h.c.} \right] \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{aux}}(-\omega)\right)_{nn} \right\} \\ &= \frac{2}{w} \left[ G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, d_2; \omega) + G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, 0_1; \omega) + G_{\text{aux}}(0_1, d_1; \omega) \right] \\ \left(\mathcal{G}_{\text{HH}}\right)_{\text{n-n-n}} &= \frac{2}{w(w-2)} \left[ G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, 0_2; \omega) + G_{\text{aux}}(0_2, d_1; \omega) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (5.4.27)$$

## 5.5 Spectral functions and self-energies

The momentum space Greens function can be expressed as a Fourier transform of the real space Greens functions:

$$G_{H-H}(\vec{k}, \omega) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{\vec{r}, \vec{r}_j} e^{i\vec{k} \cdot (\vec{r}_i - \vec{r}_j)} G_{H-H}(|\vec{r}_i - \vec{r}_j|, \omega) \quad (5.5.1)$$

where  $\vec{r}_i$  is the position vector of a particular lattice site. Because of translation invariance, the real space Greens function depends only on the relative vector between any two sites. As a result,  $\vec{r} = 0$  gives the local Greens function,  $|\vec{r}| = a$  gives the nearest-neighbour Greens function and so on ( $a$  being the lattice spacing). As we do not have real space Greens function



that are more non-local than next-nearest neighbour, we will attempt to obtain momentum space Greens function from these contributions:

$$G_{H-H}(\vec{k}, \omega) \simeq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{\vec{r}_i = \vec{r}_j} (G_{H-H}(\omega))_{\text{loc}} + \frac{1}{N} \sum_{|\vec{r}_i - \vec{r}_j| = a} e^{i\vec{k} \cdot (\vec{r}_i - \vec{r}_j)} (G_{H-H}(\omega))_{\text{n-n}} \quad (5.5.2)$$

The first summation produces a factor of  $N$ , while the second summation can be factorized into a sum over all sites (which again returns  $N$ ) and a sum over all the primitive vectors connecting any single site with all its nearest neighbours,  $\{\vec{a}_i : i \in [1, w]\}$ .

$$G_{H-H}(\vec{k}, \omega) \simeq G_{H-H}(\omega)_{\text{loc}} + G_{H-H}(\omega)_{\text{n-n}} \sum_{i=1}^w e^{i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{a}_i} + G_{H-H}(\omega)_{\text{n-n}} \sum_{i=1}^w e^{i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{b}_i} = G_{H-H}(\omega)_{\text{loc}} + G_{H-H}(\omega)_{\text{n-n}} \xi_{\vec{k}} + G_{H-H}(\omega)_{\text{n-n}} \xi'_{\vec{k}} \quad (5.5.3)$$

where we defined  $\{b_i\}$  as the set of vectors that connect a particular lattice site with its next-nearest-neighbours,  $\xi_{\vec{k}} \equiv \sum_{i=1}^w e^{i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{a}_i}$  and  $\xi'_{\vec{k}} \equiv \sum_j e^{i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{b}_j}$ . Note that  $b_j$  is simply  $a_i + a_{i'}$  where  $a_i$  and  $a_{i'}$  are orthogonal. On a d-dimensional hypercubic lattice, we obtain

$$\xi_{\vec{k}} = \sum_{i=1}^d \left( e^{ik_i a_i} + e^{-ik_i a_i} \right) = 2 \sum_{i=1}^d \cos k_i a_i \quad (5.5.4)$$

$$(5.5.5)$$

On a 2D square lattice with lattice spacing  $a$ , this simplifies to

$$\xi_{\vec{q}} = 2(\cos q_x a + \cos q_y a) \equiv \frac{-\epsilon_{\vec{q}}}{t^H}, \quad (5.5.6)$$

where  $\epsilon_{\vec{q}} = -2t^H(\cos q_x a + \cos q_y a)$  is the tight-binding dispersion.

$$G_{H-H}(\vec{k}, \omega) = G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, d_1; \omega) + \frac{2\xi_{\vec{k}}}{w} [G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, d_2; \omega) + G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, 0_1; \omega) + G_{\text{aux}}(0_1, d_1; \omega)] + \frac{2\xi'_{\vec{k}}}{w(w-2)} [G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, 0_2; \omega) + G_{\text{aux}}(0_2, d_1; \omega)] \quad (5.5.7)$$

We can now compute the  $k$ -space spectral function  $A_H(\vec{k}, \omega)$  and the real-space local spectral function  $A_H(\vec{r} = 0, \omega)$  as

$$A_{H-H}(\vec{k}, \omega) = -\frac{1}{\pi} \text{Im}(G_{H-H}(\vec{k}, \omega)) = A_{\text{aux}}(d_1, d_1; \omega) + \frac{2\xi_{\vec{k}}}{w} [A_{\text{aux}}(d_1, d_2; \omega) + A_{\text{aux}}(d_1, 0_1; \omega) + A_{\text{aux}}(0_1, d_1; \omega)] + \frac{2\xi'_{\vec{k}}}{w(w-2)} [A_{\text{aux}}(d_1, 0_2; \omega) + A_{\text{aux}}(0_2, d_1; \omega)] \quad (5.5.8)$$

where the spectral function  $A_{\text{aux}} = -\frac{1}{\pi} \text{Im} G_{\text{aux}}$ .

With the knowledge of the momentum-space Greens function  $G_{H-H}(\vec{k}, \omega)$ , we can now use Dyson's equation to calculate the self-energy for propagation of momentum excitations:

$$\Sigma(\vec{k}, \omega) = G_0(\vec{k}, \omega)^{-1} - G(\vec{k}, \omega)^{-1} \quad (5.5.9)$$

where the  $G_0(\vec{k}, \omega)^{-1} = \omega - \epsilon_k = \omega + t^{H-H} \xi_{\vec{k}}$  is the inverse  $k$ -space Greens function for the appropriate non-interacting tight-binding system. Substituting this as well as the full Greens function  $G_{H-H}(\vec{k}, \omega)$  into Dyson's equation gives

$$\Sigma_{H-H}(\vec{k}, \omega) = \omega + t^{H-H} \xi_{\vec{k}} - \left[ G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, d_1; \omega) + \frac{2\xi_{\vec{k}}}{w} [G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, d_2; \omega) + G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, 0_1; \omega) + G_{\text{aux}}(0_1, d_1; \omega)] + \frac{2\xi'_{\vec{k}}}{w(w-2)} [G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, 0_2; \omega) + G_{\text{aux}}(0_2, d_1; \omega)] \right]^{-1} \quad (5.5.10)$$

This allows us to calculate the full self-energy  $\Sigma(\vec{k}, \omega)$  for the Hubbard model on the 2D square lattice.

## 5.6 Analytic consistency checks

### 5.6.1 Single-particle Greens function and self energy for the Hubbard dimer

The simplest test involves choosing  $H^H = H^D$  and then calculating the momentum space Greens function at  $k = 0$ ,  $G(k = 0, \uparrow)$ , for the Hubbard dimer ( $N = 2, w = 1$ ). The discrete set of momenta are  $\{\vec{k}_n\} = 0, \frac{\pi}{a}$ . For  $k = 0$ , we have

$$\xi_{\vec{k}=0} = e^{ikr} = 1 \quad (5.6.1)$$

Substituting this into eq. ?? gives

$$G(k = 0, \uparrow) = \sum_n \left[ \left( |C_n^0|^2 + C_n^{0*} C_n^1 \right) \frac{1}{g_n} - \left( |\bar{C}_n^0|^2 + \bar{C}_n^{0*} \bar{C}_n^1 \right) \frac{1}{\bar{g}_n} \right] \quad (5.6.2)$$

The expansion in terms of the exact eigenstates takes the form:

$$\begin{aligned} c_{0\uparrow}^\dagger |\tilde{\Phi}_0\rangle &= x |3+\uparrow\rangle + y |3-\uparrow\rangle, & c_{1\uparrow}^\dagger |\tilde{\Phi}_0\rangle &= x |3+\uparrow\rangle - y |3-\uparrow\rangle \\ c_{0\uparrow} |\tilde{\Phi}_0\rangle &= y |1+\downarrow\rangle + x |1-\downarrow\rangle, & c_{1\uparrow} |\tilde{\Phi}_0\rangle &= y |1+\downarrow\rangle - x |1-\downarrow\rangle \end{aligned} \quad (5.6.3)$$

where  $|(3, 1) \pm (\uparrow, \downarrow)\rangle$  are the  $N = (3, 1), S^z = (+\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2})$  eigenstates of even (+) and odd (−) parity:

$$H^D |3\pm\uparrow\rangle = \pm t |3\pm\uparrow\rangle, \quad H^D |1\pm\downarrow\rangle = \mp t |1\pm\downarrow\rangle \quad (5.6.4)$$

and  $x = \frac{a_2 - a_1}{2}, y = \frac{a_2 + a_1}{2}$ . The orthogonal basis is therefore

$$\{|n\rangle\} = |3+\uparrow\rangle, |3-\uparrow\rangle, \quad \{|\bar{n}\rangle\} = |1+\downarrow\rangle, |1-\downarrow\rangle \quad (5.6.5)$$

The coefficients can thus be determined:

$$\begin{aligned} C_\pm^0 &= \langle 3\pm\uparrow | c_{0\uparrow}^\dagger | \tilde{\Phi}_0 \rangle = x, y, & C_\pm^1 &= \langle 3\pm\uparrow | c_{1\uparrow}^\dagger | \tilde{\Phi}_0 \rangle = x, -y \\ \bar{C}_\pm^0 &= \langle 1\pm\downarrow | c_{0\uparrow} | \tilde{\Phi}_0 \rangle = y, x, & \bar{C}_\pm^1 &= \langle 1\pm\downarrow | c_{1\uparrow} | \tilde{\Phi}_0 \rangle = y, -x \\ g_\pm &= \langle 3\pm\uparrow | (\omega + E_{GS} - H^D) | 3\pm\uparrow \rangle = \omega + E_{GS} \mp t, & \bar{g}_\pm &= \langle 1\pm\downarrow | (-\omega + E_{GS} - H^D) | 1\pm\downarrow \rangle = -\omega + E_{GS} \pm t \end{aligned}$$

We can see that  $|C_-^0|^2 + C_-^{0*} C_-^1 = y^2 - y^2 = 0$  and  $|\bar{C}_-^0|^2 + \bar{C}_-^{0*} \bar{C}_-^1 = x^2 - x^2 = 0$ . So we do not need to consider those terms. With this preparation, we can now calculate the Greens function:

$$G(k = 0, \omega) = \left( |C_+^0|^2 + C_+^{0*} C_+^1 \right) \frac{1}{g_+} - \left( |\bar{C}_+^0|^2 + \bar{C}_+^{0*} \bar{C}_+^1 \right) \frac{1}{\bar{g}_+} = \frac{2x^2}{\omega + E_{GS} - t} - \frac{2y^2}{-\omega + E_{GS} + t} \quad (5.6.6)$$

The final step is to recognize that  $2x^2 = \frac{a_1^2 + a_2^2 - 2a_1 a_2}{2} = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{2t}{\Delta}$ ,  $2y^2 = \frac{a_1^2 + a_2^2 + 2a_1 a_2}{2} = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{2t}{\Delta}$  and  $E_{GS} = -\frac{\Delta}{2}$ . Then,

$$G(k = 0, \omega) = \frac{\frac{1}{2} - \frac{2t}{\Delta}}{\omega - \frac{\Delta}{2} - t} - \frac{\frac{1}{2} + \frac{2t}{\Delta}}{-\omega - \frac{\Delta}{2} + t} = \frac{\frac{1}{2} - \frac{2t}{\Delta}}{\omega - \frac{\Delta}{2} - t} + \frac{\frac{1}{2} + \frac{2t}{\Delta}}{\omega + \frac{\Delta}{2} - t} \quad (5.6.7)$$

### 5.6.2 On the Bethe lattice

Another test involves considering the case of a Bethe lattice with infinite number of nearest neighbours  $w \rightarrow \infty$  (the coordination number). In such a model, the correct scaling of the  $t^H$  hopping parameter is  $t^H \rightarrow t^H / \sqrt{w}$  [26, 27, 28], such that the kinetic energy of the associated tight-binding lattice model remains finite and in competition with the localising physics of  $U$  and the magnetic ordering physics of  $J$ . This allows a metal-insulator transition in the limit of  $w \rightarrow \infty$  as well. In this limit, the dependence of the self-energy on the interacting Greens function can be shown to arise from only the site-diagonal

terms [29, 27]. This can be demonstrated from the present formalism as well, using eq.(5.5.10). Applying the limit of  $w \rightarrow \infty$  on that equation gives

$$\begin{aligned} \Sigma_{H-H}(\vec{k}, \omega) &= \lim_{w \rightarrow \infty} \left\{ \left[ G_{\text{aux}}^{(0)}(\vec{k}, \omega) \right]^{-1} - \right. \\ &\quad \left[ G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, d_1; \omega) + \frac{2\xi_{\vec{k}}}{w} [G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, d_2; \omega) + G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, 0_1; \omega) + G_{\text{aux}}(0_1, d_1; \omega)] + \frac{2\xi'_{\vec{k}}}{w(w-2)} [G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, 0_2; \omega) + G_{\text{aux}}(0_2, d_1; \omega)] \right]^{-1} \Big\} \\ &= \lim_{w \rightarrow \infty} \left\{ G_{\text{aux}}^{(0)}(\vec{k}, \omega) - G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, d_1; \omega) \right\}^{-1} \end{aligned} \quad (5.6.8)$$

where  $G_{\text{aux}}^{(0)}(\vec{k}, \omega)$  is the non-interacting Greens function. It is clear from the final form that only the diagonal term  $G_{\text{aux}}(d_1, d_1; \omega)$  of the interacting Greens function affects the self-energy.

# Chapter 6

## Future goals

### 1. The Mott metal-insulator transition:

- ✓ Obtain the metal insulator transition of the 2D Hubbard-Heisenberg model on the square lattice from the present formalism.
- ☐ Determine the nature of the bath  $\Sigma(k, \omega)$  in the metallic phase, insulating phase as well as at criticality.
- ☐ Investigate nature of the zero-temperature transition (order of transition, order parameter, etc)

### 2. Higher-order Greens functions:

- ☐ Provide expressions for two-particle Greens functions.
- ☐ Calculate explicitly the Greens functions for holon-doublon and spinon-spinon excitations as they are likely to contain more information regarding the ground state.
- ☐ Obtain spectral functions for such excitations

### 3. Benchmarking against ED and/or finite size scaling:

- ☐ ground state energy
- ☐ double occupancy

### 4. Upgrade to two-site cluster:

- ☐ Study a two-impurity model under renormalisation group
- ✓ Derive the tiling and Greens function relations for such a two-impurity model
- ☐ Demonstrate Mott MIT here.
- ☐ Investigate the nature of many-particle entanglement in such a cluster
- ☐ look for signs of a quantum liquid.

### 5. Once we have a handle on the zero temperature features, we intend to compute Greens functions at non zero temperatures.

### 6. This method can also be extended to various other models of strong correlation:

- (a) Heisenberg model, by starting from a Kondo model effective Hamiltonian
- (b) Periodic Anderson model, by starting from a SIAM with a dispersive bath
- (c) Periodic Kondo model, by starting from a Kondo model with a dispersive bath

# Appendix A

## Derivation of RG equations

### A.1 $U_b$ -free terms

#### A.1.1 Renormalisation of the impurity energy $\epsilon_d$

The coupling  $\epsilon_d$  is renormalised by three kinds of vertices:  $V^2$ ,  $J^2$  and  $K^2$ . We will consider these processes one after another. We define  $n_j$  as the number of states being decoupled on each side of the Fermi surface, at the  $j^{\text{th}}$  RG step. In order to treat both spin and isospin exchanges democratically, we take  $|\Psi\rangle_i = \frac{1}{2}(|0\rangle + |q\uparrow\rangle + |q\downarrow\rangle + |q\uparrow, q\downarrow\rangle)$  as the *initial* state for the scattering processes. The intermediate states  $|\Psi\rangle_{\text{int}}$  in the particle sector  $(c_{q\beta}|\Psi\rangle_i)$  and hole sector  $(c_{q\beta}^\dagger|\Psi\rangle_i)$  will then have both spin and isospin excitations which can couple with the corresponding impurity degree of freedom. We will assume that states  $q > k_F$  ( $\epsilon_q > 0$ ) above the Fermi surface can have only particle excitations and states below the Fermi surface can only have hole excitations. The kinetic energy part  $\epsilon_q \tau_{q\beta}$  of  $H_D$  for  $|\Psi\rangle_i$  is then zero, whereas it is always  $D/2$  for  $|\Psi\rangle_{\text{int}}$ . To demonstrate this for a typical  $q < k_F$ , the hole excitation is  $c_{q\uparrow}|\Psi\rangle_i = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|0\rangle + |q\downarrow\rangle)$ . This has an isospin term in the form of the *holon* and a spin term in the form of the down state. Since  $\tau_{q\uparrow} = -\frac{1}{2}$  in the excited state, the kinetic energy for  $|\Psi\rangle_{\text{int}}$  is  $\epsilon_q \tau_{q\uparrow} = (-D) \times (-\frac{1}{2}) = D/2$ .

The renormalisation arising from the first kind of terms, in the particle sector, is

$$\sum_{q\beta} c_{q\beta}^\dagger c_{d\beta} \frac{V^2}{\omega - H_D} c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{q\beta} = \sum_{q\beta} V^2 \hat{n}_{q\beta} (1 - \hat{n}_{d\beta}) \left( \frac{1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{\omega - E_0} + \frac{\hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{\omega' - E_1} \right) = V^2 n_j \sum_{\beta} (1 - \hat{n}_{d\beta}) \left( \frac{1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{\omega_0 - E_0} + \frac{\hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{\omega_1 - E_1} \right) \quad (\text{A.1.1})$$

$q$  runs over the momentum states that are being decoupled at this RG step:  $|q| = \Lambda_j$ .  $E_{1,0}$  are the diagonal parts of the Hamiltonian at  $\hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} = 0, 1$  respectively. We have  $\hat{n}_{d\beta} = 1$  in the intermediate state because of the  $c_{d\beta}^\dagger$  in front of the Greens function. Applying  $c_{q\beta}$  on the initial state  $|\Psi\rangle_i$  leaves us with  $C_q^z = -\frac{1}{2}$  and  $s_q^z = \frac{1}{2}\beta$ . We also know that

$$\hat{n}_{d\beta} = 1, \begin{cases} \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} = 0 & \implies S_d^z = \frac{1}{2}\beta, C_d^z = 0, \epsilon_d (\hat{n}_{d\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{d\downarrow})^2 = \epsilon_d \\ \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} = 1 & \implies S_d^z = 0, C_d^z = \frac{1}{2}, \epsilon_d (\hat{n}_{d\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{d\downarrow})^2 = 0 \end{cases} \quad (\text{A.1.2})$$

Combining all this, we can write  $E_1 = \frac{D}{2} - \frac{K}{4}$  and  $E_0 = \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d - \frac{J}{4}$ . In order to relate  $\omega_0$  with  $\omega_1$  with the common fluctuation scale  $\omega$  for the conduction electrons, we will replace these quantum fluctuation scales by the current renormalised values of the single-particle self-energy for the initial state from which we started scattering. For  $\hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} = 0$ , there is no additional self-energy because the impurity does not have any spin:  $\omega_0 = \omega$ . For  $\hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} = 1$ , we have an additional self-energy of  $\epsilon_d$  arising from the correlation on the impurity:  $\omega_1 = \omega + \epsilon_d$ . Substituting the values of  $E_{0,1}$  and  $\omega_{0,1}$ , we get

$$V^2 n_j \sum_{\beta} (1 - \hat{n}_{d\beta}) \left( \frac{1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \epsilon_d + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{\hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d + \frac{K}{4}} \right) \quad (\text{A.1.3})$$

Performing a similar calculation for the hole sector gives the contribution:

$$V^2 n_j \sum_{\beta} \hat{n}_{d\beta} \left( \frac{1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{\hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \epsilon_d + \frac{J}{4}} \right) \quad (\text{A.1.4})$$

We now come to the second type of terms: spin-spin. We first look at the particle sector:

$$\frac{J^2}{4} \sum_{q\beta} c_{d\bar{\beta}}^{\dagger} c_{d\beta} c_{q\beta}^{\dagger} c_{-q\bar{\beta}} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} c_{d\beta}^{\dagger} c_{d\bar{\beta}} c_{q\bar{\beta}}^{\dagger} c_{q\beta} = \frac{J^2}{4} n_j \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} \sum_{\beta} \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} (1 - \hat{n}_{d\beta}) \quad (\text{A.1.5})$$

The diagonal part in the denominator was simple to deduce in this case, because the nature of the scattering requires the spins  $S_d^z$  and  $\frac{\beta}{2} (\hat{n}_{q\beta} - \hat{n}_{q\bar{\beta}})$  to be anti-parallel. This ensures that the intermediate state has an energy of  $E = \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d - \frac{J}{4}$ , and the quantum fluctuation scale is  $\omega' = \omega + \epsilon_d$ , such that  $\omega' - E = \omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}$ . In the hole sector, we have

$$\frac{J^2}{4} n_j \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} \sum_{\beta} \hat{n}_{d\beta} (1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}) \quad (\text{A.1.6})$$

The final kind of scattering is the  $K^2$  type. Similar to the  $J^2$  term, we get the following contribution:

$$\frac{K^2}{4} \sum_{q\beta} c_{q\beta}^{\dagger} c_{q\bar{\beta}}^{\dagger} c_{d\bar{\beta}} c_{d\beta} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} c_{d\beta}^{\dagger} c_{d\bar{\beta}}^{\dagger} c_{q\bar{\beta}} c_{q\beta} = \frac{K^2}{2} n_j \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} (1 - \hat{n}_{d\uparrow}) (1 - \hat{n}_{d\downarrow}) \quad (\text{A.1.7})$$

in the particle sector. This is again because  $E = \frac{D}{2} - \frac{K}{4}$  in the intermediate state and  $\omega' = \omega$ . In the hole sector, we get

$$\frac{K^2}{2} n_j \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} \hat{n}_{d\uparrow} \hat{n}_{d\downarrow}. \quad (\text{A.1.8})$$

We now have all possible renormalisation to the impurity energy  $\epsilon_d$ . To actually compute the renormalisation, we will first calculate the renormalisation in the energies  $\epsilon_0, \epsilon_1$  and  $\epsilon_2$  of the impurity states  $|\hat{n}_d = 0\rangle, |\hat{n}_d = 1\rangle, |\hat{n}_d = 2\rangle$  respectively. The renormalisation of these states are given by the following terms:

- $\Delta\epsilon_0$  is given by the renormalisation of the term  $(1 - \hat{n}_{d\uparrow}) (1 - \hat{n}_{d\downarrow})$
- $\Delta\epsilon_1$  is given by the renormalisation of either  $(1 - \hat{n}_{d\uparrow}) \hat{n}_{d\downarrow}$  or  $(1 - \hat{n}_{d\downarrow}) \hat{n}_{d\uparrow}$
- $\Delta\epsilon_2$  is given by the renormalisation of  $\hat{n}_{d\uparrow} \hat{n}_{d\downarrow}$

From eqs. A.1.3, A.1.4, A.1.5, A.1.6, A.1.7 and A.1.8, we write

$$\Delta\epsilon_0 = \Delta\epsilon_2 = \frac{2V^2 n_j}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \epsilon_d + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{K^2 n_j / 2}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4}}, \quad \Delta\epsilon_1 = \frac{2V^2 n_j}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{J^2 n_j / 2}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} \quad (\text{A.1.9})$$

We had started with a particle-hole symmetric Hamiltonian ( $2\epsilon_d + U = 0$ ); the fact that  $\Delta\epsilon_0 = \Delta\epsilon_2$  means the RG transformation has preserved that symmetry. The renormalisation of  $\epsilon_d$  is simply the renormalisation in the energy difference between the singly-occupied and vacant impurity levels:  $\Delta\epsilon_d = \Delta\epsilon_1 - \Delta\epsilon_0$ . This gives our first RG equation:

$$\Delta\epsilon_d = 2V^2 n_j \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d + \frac{K}{4}} - \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \epsilon_d + \frac{J}{4}} \right) + \frac{n_j}{2} \left( \frac{J^2}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} - \frac{K^2}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} \right) \quad (\text{A.1.10})$$

## A.1.2 Renormalisation of the hybridisation $V$

Renormalisation of  $V$  happens through two kinds of processes:  $VJ$  and  $VK$ . In order words, the two vertices involve one single-particle scattering and one spin or isospin exchange respectively. We first look at the vertices that involve a spin-exchange scattering.

Within spin-exchange, the scattering can be either via  $S_d^z$  or through  $S_d^\pm$ . For the first kind, we have the following contribution in the particle sector:

$$\sum_{q\beta} V c_{q\beta}^\dagger c_{d\beta} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} \frac{1}{4} J \sum_k \left( \hat{n}_{d\beta} - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} \right) c_{k\beta}^\dagger c_{q\beta} = \frac{1}{4} V J n_j \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\omega'_1 - E} + \frac{1}{\omega'_2 - E} \right) \sum_{k\beta} \left( 1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} \right) c_{d\beta} c_{k\beta}^\dagger \quad (\text{A.1.11})$$

The transformation from  $\frac{1}{\omega - H_D}$  to  $\frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\omega'_1 - E} + \frac{1}{\omega'_2 - E} \right)$  is made so that we can account for both the initial state and the final state energies through the two fluctuation scales  $\omega'_1$  and  $\omega'_2$  respectively; we calculate the denominators for both the initial and final states, and then take the mean of the two (hence the factor of half in front). This was not required previously because in the earlier scattering processes, the impurity returned to its initial state at the end, at least in terms of  $\epsilon_d \left( \hat{n}_{d\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{d\downarrow} \right)^2$ , and so we had  $\omega'_1 = \omega'_2 = \omega'$ .

Note that the  $c_{d\beta}$  in front of the Greens function resulted in  $\left( \hat{n}_{d\beta} - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} \right) \rightarrow \left( 1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} \right)$ . The intermediate state is characterised by  $\hat{n}_{d\beta} = 1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} = 1$ , which means that  $E = \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d - \frac{J}{4}$ . Moreover, the initial state gives  $\omega'_1 = \omega + \epsilon_d$  while the final state gives  $\omega'_2 = \omega$ . Therefore, the renormalisation becomes

$$-\frac{n_j}{4} V J \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \epsilon_d + \frac{J}{4}} \right) \sum_{k\beta} \left( 1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} \right) c_{k\beta}^\dagger c_{d\beta} \quad (\text{A.1.12})$$

One can generate another such process by exchanging the single-particle process and the spin-exchange process:

$$\sum_{q\beta} \frac{1}{4} J \sum_k \left( \hat{n}_{d\beta} - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} \right) c_{q\beta}^\dagger c_{k\beta} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} V c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{q\beta} \quad (\text{A.1.13})$$

This is simply the Hermitian conjugate of the previous contribution. Combining this with the previous then gives

$$-\frac{n_j}{8} V J \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \epsilon_d + \frac{J}{4}} \right) \sum_{k\beta} \left( 1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} \right) \left( c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{k\beta} + \text{h.c.} \right) \quad (\text{A.1.14})$$

We now consider the spin-exchange processes involving  $S_d^\pm$ :

$$\sum_{q\beta} V c_{q\beta}^\dagger c_{d\beta} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} \frac{1}{2} J \sum_k c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{d\bar{\beta}} c_{k\bar{\beta}}^\dagger c_{q\beta} = \frac{1}{2} V J n_j \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\omega'_1 - E} + \frac{1}{\omega'_2 - E} \right) \sum_{k\beta} \left( 1 - \hat{n}_{d\beta} \right) c_{d\bar{\beta}} c_{k\bar{\beta}}^\dagger \quad (\text{A.1.15})$$

We again have  $E = \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d - \frac{J}{4}$ ,  $\omega'_1 = \omega + \epsilon_d$  and  $\omega'_2 = \omega$ , which gives

$$-\frac{1}{2} V J n_j \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} \sum_{k\beta} \left( 1 - \hat{n}_{d\beta} \right) c_{k\bar{\beta}}^\dagger c_{d\bar{\beta}} \quad (\text{A.1.16})$$

Combining this with the Hermitian conjugate obtained from exchanging the processes gives

$$-\frac{1}{4} V J n_j \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \epsilon_d + \frac{J}{4}} \right) \sum_{k\beta} \left( 1 - \hat{n}_{d\beta} \right) \left( c_{k\bar{\beta}}^\dagger c_{d\bar{\beta}} + \text{h.c.} \right) \quad (\text{A.1.17})$$

The contributions from the hole sector are obtained making the transformation  $\hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} \rightarrow 1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}$  on the particle sector contributions. The total renormalisation to  $V$  from  $VJ$  processes are

$$-\frac{3n_j}{8} V J \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \epsilon_d + \frac{J}{4}} \right) \sum_{k\beta} \left( c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{k\beta} + \text{h.c.} \right) \quad (\text{A.1.18})$$

We now look at the  $VK$  processes. The first one is

$$\sum_{q\beta} V c_{q\beta}^\dagger c_{d\beta} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} \frac{1}{4} K \sum_k \left( \hat{n}_d - 1 \right) c_{k\beta}^\dagger c_{q\beta} = -\frac{1}{8} V K n_j \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d + \frac{K}{4}} \right) \sum_{k\beta} \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} c_{k\beta}^\dagger c_{d\beta} \quad (\text{A.1.19})$$

The exchanged process again gives the Hermitian conjugate, so the combined contribution is

$$-\frac{1}{8}VKn_j \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d + \frac{K}{4}} \right) \sum_{k\beta} \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} \left( c_{k\beta}^\dagger c_{d\beta} + \text{h.c.} \right) \quad (\text{A.1.20})$$

The isospin-flip vertex gives

$$\sum_{q\beta} V c_{q\beta}^\dagger c_{d\beta} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} \frac{1}{2} K \sum_k c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{d\bar{\beta}}^\dagger c_{k\bar{\beta}} c_{q\beta} = \frac{1}{4} K V n_j \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d + \frac{K}{4}} \right) \sum_{k\beta} (1 - \hat{n}_{d\beta}) c_{d\bar{\beta}}^\dagger c_{k\bar{\beta}}. \quad (\text{A.1.21})$$

Combining with Hermitian conjugate gives

$$\frac{1}{4} K V n_j \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d + \frac{K}{4}} \right) \sum_{k\beta} (1 - \hat{n}_{d\beta}) \left( c_{d\bar{\beta}}^\dagger c_{k\bar{\beta}} + \text{h.c.} \right). \quad (\text{A.1.22})$$

After obtaining the hole sector contributions, the total renormalisation from  $VK$  processes is

$$-\frac{3n_j}{4} V K \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d + \frac{K}{4}} \right) \sum_{k\beta} \left( c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{k\beta} + \text{h.c.} \right). \quad (\text{A.1.23})$$

The RG equation for  $V$  is

$$\Delta V = -\frac{3n_j V}{8} \left[ J \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \epsilon_d + \frac{J}{4}} \right) + K \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d + \frac{K}{4}} \right) \right] \quad (\text{A.1.24})$$

### A.1.3 Renormalisation of the exchange couplings $J$ and $K$

We will just note the renormalisation in  $J^z$ , which will be equal to  $J^\pm$  due to spin-rotation symmetry. The terms that renormalise  $J^z$  are of the form  $S_d^\pm S_d^\mp$ . In the particle sector, we have

$$\sum_q \sum_{kk'} \frac{1}{4} J^2 S_d^\pm c_{q\mp}^\dagger c_{k'\pm} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} S_d^\mp c_{k\pm}^\dagger c_{q\mp} = -n_j \frac{1}{4} J^2 \left( \frac{1}{2} \pm S_d^z \right) \sum_{kk'} c_{k\pm}^\dagger c_{k\pm} \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}}. \quad (\text{A.1.25})$$

The denominator is determined using  $E = \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d - \frac{J}{4}$  and  $\omega' = \omega + \epsilon_d$ . In the hole sector, we similarly have

$$\sum_q \sum_{kk'} \frac{1}{4} J^2 S_d^\mp c_{k\pm}^\dagger c_{q\mp} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} S_d^\pm c_{q\mp}^\dagger c_{k'\pm} = n_j \frac{1}{4} J^2 \left( \frac{1}{2} \mp S_d^z \right) \sum_{kk'} c_{k\pm}^\dagger c_{k\pm} \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}}. \quad (\text{A.1.26})$$

Adding all four expressions and dropping the constant part, we get

$$-n_j \frac{1}{2} J^2 S_d^z \sum_{kk'} \left( c_{k\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\uparrow} - c_{k\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow} \right) \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}}. \quad (\text{A.1.27})$$

We can now directly read off the RG equation for  $J$ :

$$\Delta J = -\frac{n_j J^2}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} \quad (\text{A.1.28})$$

Since the spin and charge degrees of freedom are treated on an equal footing in the model, we obtain the RG equation for  $K$  by simply changing  $J \rightarrow K$ :

$$\Delta K = -\frac{n_j K^2}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} \quad (\text{A.1.29})$$



## A.2 $U_b$ -included terms

We first Fourier transform the  $U_b$ -term to  $k$ -space. In  $k$ -space, the diagonal contribution (to  $H_D$ ) coming from this term is the single-particle self-energy  $-U_b \left( \hat{n}_{q\beta} \right)^2$  which can be made particle-hole symmetric in the form:

$$-U_b \left( \tau_{q\beta} \right)^2 \quad (\text{A.2.1})$$

where  $q$  is the  $k$ -state being decoupled and  $\tau \equiv \hat{n} - 1/2$ . In the initial state  $|\Psi\rangle_i$ , we have  $\langle \hat{n}_{q\beta} \rangle = 1/2 \implies \tau_{q\beta} = 0$ , so the contribution of  $U_b$  to that state is 0. For both hole excitations  $c_{q\beta} |\Psi\rangle_i$  as well as particle excitations  $c_{q\beta}^\dagger |\Psi\rangle_i$ , the intermediate state energy lowers to  $-U_b/4$ .

The off-diagonal part is

$$-\frac{U_b}{2} \sum_{kk'\sigma} c_{k\sigma}^\dagger c_{k'\sigma} + U_b \sum_{k_1, k_2, k'_1, k'_2} c_{k_1\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k_2\uparrow} c_{k'_1\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k'_2\downarrow} \quad (\text{A.2.2})$$

We ignore the potential scattering arising from the first term.

### A.2.1 Renormalisation of $U_b$

$U_b$  can renormalise only via itself. The relevant renormalisation term in the particle sector is

$$U_b^2 \sum_{q\beta} \sum_{k_1, k_2, k_3, k'_1, k'_2, k'_3} c_{q\beta}^\dagger c_{k_1\beta} c_{k_3\beta}^\dagger c_{k'_1\beta} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} c_{k'_2\beta}^\dagger c_{k'_3\beta} c_{k_2\beta}^\dagger c_{q\beta} \quad (\text{A.2.3})$$

In order to renormalise  $U_b$ , we need to contract one more pair of momenta. There are two choices. The first is by setting  $k_3 = k'_3 = q$ . The two internal states, then, are  $q\beta$  and  $q\bar{\beta}$ . As discussed above, the intermediate state energy is  $-U_b/4$ . We therefore have

$$\frac{U_b^2 n_j}{\omega - D/2 + U_b/4} \sum_{\beta} \sum_{k_1, k_2, k'_1, k'_2} c_{k_1\beta} c_{k'_1\bar{\beta}} c_{k'_2\beta}^\dagger c_{k_2\beta}^\dagger = \frac{U_b^2 n_j}{\omega - D/2 + U_b/4} \sum_{\beta} \sum_{k_1, k_2, k'_1, k'_2} c_{k'_2\bar{\beta}}^\dagger c_{k'_1\bar{\beta}} c_{k_2\beta}^\dagger c_{k_1\beta} \quad (\text{A.2.4})$$

Another way to contract the momenta is by setting  $k'_1 = k'_2 = q$ , which gives a renormalisation of

$$\frac{U_b^2 n_j}{\omega - D/2 + U_b/4} \sum_{\beta} \sum_{k_1, k_2, k_3, k'_3} c_{k_1\beta} c_{k_3\bar{\beta}}^\dagger c_{k'_3\bar{\beta}} c_{k_2\beta}^\dagger = -\frac{U_b^2 n_j}{\omega - D/2} \sum_{\beta} \sum_{k_1, k_2, k_3, k'_3} c_{k'_3\bar{\beta}}^\dagger c_{k_3\bar{\beta}} c_{k_2\beta}^\dagger c_{k_1\beta} \quad (\text{A.2.5})$$

The two contributions cancel each other. The same cancellation happens in the hole sector as well.

### A.2.2 Renormalisation of $U$

$U_b$  does not have any new renormalisation term on account of  $U_b$ .  $U_b$  does however modify the existing RG equation for  $U$ , by shifting the denominator. The existing RG equation is

$$\Delta U = -4V^2 n_j \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \epsilon_d + \frac{K}{4}} - \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \epsilon_d + \frac{J}{4}} \right) - n_j \left( \frac{J^2}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} - \frac{K^2}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} \right). \quad (\text{A.2.6})$$

On accounting for the contribution of  $U_b$  to the denominator, we get

$$\Delta U = -4V^2 n_j \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \epsilon_d + \frac{K}{4}} - \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} - \epsilon_d + \frac{J}{4}} \right) - n_j \left( \frac{J^2}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{J}{4}} - \frac{K^2}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{K}{4}} \right). \quad (\text{A.2.7})$$

### A.2.3 Renormalisation of $V$

The single-particle hybridisation  $V$  renormalises through terms of  $VU_b$  and  $U_bV$  kind. The first term gives

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{q\beta} \sum_k U_b V c_{q\beta}^\dagger c_{k\beta} \hat{n}_{q\bar{\beta}} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{q\beta} \\ &= n_j U_b V \sum_{k\beta} c_{k\beta} \left[ \frac{\hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\omega_1 - E_1} + \frac{1}{\omega'_1 - E_1} \right) + \frac{1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\omega_0 - E_0} + \frac{1}{\omega'_0 - E_0} \right) \right] c_{d\beta}^\dagger \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.2.8})$$

$E_1$  and  $E_0$  are the intermediate state energies for  $\hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} = 1$  and 0 respectively.  $\omega_{1,0}$  are the quantum fluctuation scales for the corresponding initial states.  $\omega'_{1,0}$  are the fluctuation scales for the corresponding final states. The intermediate energies are  $E_1 = D/2 - U_b/4 - K/4$ ,  $E_0 = D/2 - U_b/4 - U/2 - J/4$ . The fluctuation scales are  $\omega_1 = \omega - U/2 = \omega'_0$ ,  $\omega'_1 = \omega = \omega_0$ . Substituting these gives

$$\begin{aligned} & -n_j U_b V \sum_{k\beta} c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{k\beta} \left[ \frac{\hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \frac{U}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{K}{4}} \right) \right. \\ & \quad \left. + \frac{1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{U}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{J}{4}} \right) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.2.9})$$

The second term is of the form

$$\sum_{q\beta} \sum_k U_b V c_{q\beta}^\dagger c_{d\beta} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} \hat{n}_{q\bar{\beta}} c_{k\beta}^\dagger c_{q\beta} \quad (\text{A.2.10})$$

and this is just the Hermitian conjugate of the previous term, so these two terms together lead to

$$\begin{aligned} & -n_j U_b V \sum_{k\beta} (c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{k\beta} + \text{h.c.}) \left[ \frac{\hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \frac{U}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{K}{4}} \right) \right. \\ & \quad \left. + \frac{1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{U}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{J}{4}} \right) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.2.11})$$

In the hole sector, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{q\beta} \sum_k U_b V \hat{n}_{q\bar{\beta}} c_{k\beta}^\dagger c_{q\beta} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} c_{q\beta}^\dagger c_{d\beta} \\ & - \sum_{q\beta} \sum_k U_b V (1 - \hat{n}_{q\bar{\beta}}) c_{k\beta}^\dagger c_{q\beta} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} c_{q\beta}^\dagger c_{d\beta} \\ &= -n_j U_b V \sum_{k\beta} c_{k\beta}^\dagger \left[ \frac{\hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\omega_1 - E_1} + \frac{1}{\omega'_1 - E_1} \right) + \frac{1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\omega_0 - E_0} + \frac{1}{\omega'_0 - E_0} \right) \right] c_{d\beta} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.2.12})$$

$E_1 = D/2 - U_b/4 - U/2 - J/4$ ,  $E_0 = D/2 - U_b/4 - K/4$ . The fluctuation scales are  $\omega_1 = \omega = \omega'_0$ ,  $\omega'_1 = \omega - U/2 = \omega_0$ . Substituting these gives

$$\begin{aligned} & -n_j U_b V \sum_{k\beta} c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{k\beta} \left[ \frac{1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \frac{U}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{K}{4}} \right) \right. \\ & \quad \left. + \frac{\hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{U}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{J}{4}} \right) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.2.13})$$

The other term, obtained by exchanging  $V$  and  $U_b$ , gives the Hermitian conjugate, so the overall contribution from the hole sector is the same as the total contribution from the particle sector, but with  $\hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}} \rightarrow 1 - \hat{n}_{d\bar{\beta}}$ . Combining both the sectors, we get

$$-n_j U_b V \sum_{k\beta} \left( c_{d\beta}^\dagger c_{k\beta} + \text{h.c.} \right) \frac{1}{2} \left[ \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \frac{U}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{K}{4}} \right) + \left( \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{U}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{1}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{J}{4}} \right) \right] \quad (\text{A.2.14})$$

Combining with the already existing RG equations, the complete RG equation for  $V$  becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta V &= -\frac{3n_j V}{8} \left[ \left( \frac{J}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{J}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{U}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} \right) + K \left( \frac{K}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{K}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} - \frac{U}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} \right) \right] \\ &\quad - \frac{n_j U_b}{2} \left[ \left( \frac{V}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} - \frac{U}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{V}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{K}{4}} \right) + \left( \frac{V}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{U}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{V}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{J}{4}} \right) \right] \\ &= -\frac{n_j V}{8} \left[ \left( \frac{3J + 4U_b}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{J}{4}} + \frac{3J + 4U_b}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{U}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} \right) + \left( \frac{3K + 4U_b}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} + \frac{K}{4}} + \frac{3K + 4U_b}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{4} - \frac{U}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} \right) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.2.15})$$

#### A.2.4 Renormalisation of $J$ and $K$

We will track the entire renormalisation purely from that of  $J^+$ , by virtue of the SU(2) symmetry.  $J^+$  renormalises through the  $JU_b$  terms. One of the terms is

$$\frac{1}{2} JU_b \sum_q \sum_{k,k'} S_d^+ c_{q\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k\uparrow} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} \hat{n}_{q\uparrow} c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger c_{q\downarrow} = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{JU_b n_j}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} \sum_{k,k'} S_d^+ c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k\uparrow} \quad (\text{A.2.16})$$

The factor of half in front is the same half factor that appears in front of the  $S_1^+ S_2^-, S_1^- S_2^+$  terms when we rewrite  $\vec{S}_1 \cdot \vec{S}_2$  in terms of  $S^z, S^\pm$ . Another term is obtained by switching  $J$  and  $U_b$ :

$$\frac{1}{2} JU_b \sum_q \sum_{k,k'} \hat{n}_{q\downarrow} c_{q\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k\uparrow} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} S_d^+ c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger c_{q\uparrow} = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{JU_b n_j}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} \sum_{k,k'} S_d^+ c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k\uparrow} \quad (\text{A.2.17})$$

The corresponding terms in the hole sector are

$$\frac{1}{2} JU_b \sum_q \sum_{k,k'} S_d^+ c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger c_{q\uparrow} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} \hat{n}_{q\downarrow} c_{q\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k\uparrow} = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{JU_b n_j}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} \sum_{k,k'} S_d^+ c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k\uparrow} \quad (\text{A.2.18})$$

$$\frac{1}{2} JU_b \sum_q \sum_{k,k'} \hat{n}_{q\uparrow} c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger c_{q\downarrow} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} S_d^+ c_{q\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k\uparrow} = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{JU_b n_j}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} \sum_{k,k'} S_d^+ c_{k'\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k\uparrow} \quad (\text{A.2.19})$$

Adding all these terms and combining with the existing RG equation, we get the updated RG equation for  $J$ :

$$\Delta J = -J n_j \frac{4U_b + J}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{2} + \frac{J}{4}} \quad (\text{A.2.20})$$

We will follow the same strategy with  $K$  - we will calculate the renormalisation in  $K^+$ . The first term is

$$\frac{1}{2} KU_b \sum_q \sum_{k,k'} \hat{n}_{q\downarrow} c_{q\uparrow}^\dagger c_{k'\uparrow} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} C_d^+ c_{k\downarrow} c_{q\uparrow} = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{KU_b n_j}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} \sum_{k,k'} C_d^+ c_{k\downarrow} c_{k'\uparrow} \quad (\text{A.2.21})$$

The second term in the same sector is obtained by flipping the spins of  $k$  and  $q$ :

$$\frac{1}{2}KU_b \sum_q \sum_{k,k'} \hat{n}_{q\uparrow} c_{q\downarrow}^\dagger c_{k'\downarrow} \frac{1}{\omega - H_D} C_d^+ c_{q\downarrow} c_{k\uparrow} = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{KU_b n_j}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} \sum_{k,k'} C_d^+ c_{k\downarrow} c_{k'\uparrow} \quad (\text{A.2.22})$$

The terms in the hole sector give identical contributions. The RG equation for  $K$  is

$$\Delta K = -K n_j \frac{4U_b + K}{\omega - \frac{D}{2} + \frac{U_b}{2} + \frac{K}{4}} \quad (\text{A.2.23})$$

## Appendix B

# Some analytic results for the Hubbard dimer and the Hubbard model

### B.1 Spectrum of the Hubbard dimer

Here we document the spectrum of the Hubbard dimer Hamiltonian in eqs. 5.2.2.

eigenstate	symbol	eigenvalue
$ 0, 0\rangle$	$ 0\rangle$	$\frac{U^H}{2}$
$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} ( \sigma, 0\rangle \pm  0, \sigma\rangle)$	$ 0\sigma_{\pm}\rangle$	$\mp t^H$
$ \sigma, \sigma\rangle$	$ \sigma\sigma\rangle$	$-\frac{U^H}{2}$
$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} ( \uparrow, \downarrow\rangle +  \downarrow, \uparrow\rangle)$	$ ST\rangle$	$-\frac{U^H}{2}$
$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} ( 2, 0\rangle -  0, 2\rangle)$	$ CS\rangle$	$\frac{U^H}{2}$
$a_1(U^H, t^H) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} ( \uparrow, \downarrow\rangle -  \downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) + a_2(U^H, t^H) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} ( 2, 0\rangle +  0, 2\rangle)$	$ -\rangle$	$-\frac{1}{2}\Delta(U^H, t^H)$
$-a_2(U^H, t^H) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} ( \uparrow, \downarrow\rangle -  \downarrow, \uparrow\rangle) + a_1(U^H, t^H) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} ( 2, 0\rangle +  0, 2\rangle)$	$ +\rangle$	$\frac{1}{2}\Delta(U^H, t^H)$
$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} ( \sigma, 2\rangle \pm  2, \sigma\rangle)$	$ 2\sigma_{\pm}\rangle$	$\pm t^H$
$ 2, 2\rangle$	$ 4\rangle$	$\frac{U^H}{2}$

Table B.1: Spectrum of Hubbard dimer at half-filling

### B.2 Greens function of Hubbard model in the atomic limit

The atomic limit is described by the Hamiltonian  $H = -\frac{U}{2} \sum_i (\hat{n}_{i\uparrow} - \hat{n}_{i\downarrow})^2$ . Since the Hamiltonian has decoupled into  $\sum_i \equiv N$  single-site Hamiltonians, we can easily write down the retarded Greens function for a single site by identifying the ground state configuration of a site. The ground states are of course  $|\Psi\rangle_i = |\uparrow\rangle, |\downarrow\rangle$ , in the absence of any symmetry-breaking. The finite temperature retarded Greens function in the time domain is given by

$$G_{i,\sigma}(T, t) = -i\theta(t) \frac{1}{Z} \sum_n e^{-\beta E_n} \langle n | \{c_{i\sigma}(t), c_{i\sigma}^\dagger\} | n \rangle \quad (\text{B.2.1})$$

where  $n$  labels the eigenstates of the  $H$ . At  $T \rightarrow 0$ , only the ground states will survive in the exponential and the partition function  $Z$ , such that the formula then reduces to

$$G_{i,\sigma}(T \rightarrow 0, t) = -i\theta(t) \langle GS | \{c_{i\sigma}(t), c_{i\sigma}^\dagger\} | GS \rangle \quad (\text{B.2.2})$$

Since the Hamiltonian is simple, we can compute the time-dependent operator  $c_{i\sigma}(t) = e^{iHt} c_{i\sigma} e^{-iHt}$ . Using the BCH lemma, we have

$$e^{iHt} c_{i\sigma} e^{-iHt} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (it)^n \frac{1}{n!} [H, c_{i\sigma}]_n \quad (\text{B.2.3})$$

where  $[H, c_{i\sigma}]_n = [H, [H, c_{i\sigma}]_{n-1}]$ ,  $[H, c_{i\sigma}]_0 = c_{i\sigma}$ . The first two non-trivial commutators are

$$[H, c_{i\sigma}]_1 = -U\tau_{i\bar{\sigma}}c_{i\sigma}, \quad \text{and} \quad [H, c_{i\sigma}]_2 = \frac{1}{4}U^2c_{i\sigma}, \quad (\text{B.2.4})$$

such that

$$\begin{aligned} e^{iHt} c_{i\sigma} e^{-iHt} &= \left[ c_{i\sigma} + \frac{i^2 t^2}{2!} \frac{U^2}{2^2} c_{i\sigma} + \frac{i^4 t^4}{4!} \frac{U^4}{2^4} c_{i\sigma} + \dots \right] + \left[ -\frac{it}{1!} U\tau_{i\bar{\sigma}}c_{i\sigma} - \frac{i^3 t^3}{3!} \frac{U^3}{4} \tau_{i\bar{\sigma}}c_{i\sigma} + \dots \right] \\ &= c_{i\sigma} \left[ \cos(Ut/2) - 2i\tau_{i\bar{\sigma}} \sin(Ut/2) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (\text{B.2.5})$$

Using this, we can write

$$\{c_{i\sigma}(t), c_{i\sigma}^\dagger\} = \{c_{i\sigma}, c_{i\sigma}^\dagger\} \left[ \cos(Ut/2) - 2i\tau_{i\bar{\sigma}} \sin(Ut/2) \right] = \left[ \cos(Ut/2) - 2i\tau_{i\bar{\sigma}} \sin(Ut/2) \right] \quad (\text{B.2.6})$$

and the Greens function becomes

$$G_{i,\sigma}(T \rightarrow 0, t) = -i\theta(t) \langle GS | \left[ \cos(Ut/2) - 2i\tau_{i\bar{\sigma}} \sin(Ut/2) \right] | GS \rangle = -i\theta(t) \left[ \cos \frac{Ut}{2} - 2i \sin \frac{Ut}{2} \langle \tau_{i\bar{\sigma}} \rangle \right] \quad (\text{B.2.7})$$

We now Fourier transform to frequency domain:

$$G_{i,\sigma}(\omega) = -i \int_0^\infty dt e^{i\omega t} \left[ \cos \frac{Ut}{2} - 2i \sin \frac{Ut}{2} \langle \tau_{i\bar{\sigma}} \rangle \right] = \frac{1 + \langle \tau_{i\bar{\sigma}} \rangle}{\omega - \frac{U}{2}} + \frac{1 - \langle \tau_{i\bar{\sigma}} \rangle}{\omega + \frac{U}{2}} \quad (\text{B.2.8})$$

The spin-total Greens function for the site  $i$  is

$$G_i(\omega) = \sum_{\sigma} G_{i,\sigma}(\omega) = \frac{1 + \langle \tau_i \rangle}{\omega - \frac{U}{2}} + \frac{1 - \langle \tau_i \rangle}{\omega + \frac{U}{2}} \quad (\text{B.2.9})$$

At half-filling, we have  $\tau_i = 1$ .

### B.3 Local Greens function for the Hubbard dimer

From the spectral representation, we have the following expression for the local Greens function for the Hubbard dimer at site 0:

$$G_{D,00}^\sigma(\omega) = \frac{1}{Z} \sum_{m,n} \|\langle m | c_{i\sigma} | n \rangle\|^2 \left( e^{-\beta E_m} + e^{-\beta E_n} \right) \frac{1}{\omega + E_m - E_n} \quad (\text{B.3.1})$$

$m, n$  sum over the exact eigenstates.  $E_m, E_n$  are the corresponding energies. We are interested in the  $T \rightarrow 0$  Greens function. In that limit, all exponentials except that for the ground state  $E_{gs}$  will die out. The exponential inside the summation will then cancel the exponential in the partition function.

$$\begin{aligned} G_{D,00}^\sigma(\omega, T \rightarrow 0) &= \sum_n \left[ \|\langle GS | c_{i\sigma} | n \rangle\|^2 \frac{1}{\omega + E_{GS} - E_n} + \|\langle n | c_{i\sigma} | GS \rangle\|^2 \frac{1}{\omega + E_n - E_{GS}} \right] \\ &= \sum_n \left[ \|\langle n | c_{i\sigma}^\dagger | GS \rangle\|^2 \frac{1}{\omega + E_{GS} - E_n} + \|\langle n | c_{i\sigma} | GS \rangle\|^2 \frac{1}{\omega + E_n - E_{GS}} \right] \end{aligned} \quad (\text{B.3.2})$$

The ground state  $|GS\rangle$  is just the state  $|-\rangle$  in the table B.1. We will choose to look at  $\sigma = \uparrow$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} c_{1\uparrow} |-\rangle &= \frac{a_1}{\sqrt{2}} |0, \downarrow\rangle + \frac{a_2}{\sqrt{2}} |\downarrow, 0\rangle \\ c_{1\uparrow}^\dagger |-\rangle &= -\frac{a_1}{\sqrt{2}} |2, \uparrow\rangle + \frac{a_2}{\sqrt{2}} |\uparrow, 2\rangle \end{aligned} \quad (\text{B.3.3})$$

The set of states  $|n\rangle$  that give non-zero inner product  $|GS\rangle$  are therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \{|n\rangle\} &= |0 \downarrow_\pm\rangle \\ ||\langle n| c_{\uparrow\sigma} |GS\rangle||^2 &= \frac{1}{4} (a_2 \pm a_1)^2 = \frac{1}{4} (1 \pm 2a_1 a_2) \\ \{E_n\} &= \mp t \end{aligned} \quad (\text{B.3.4})$$

for the second inner product, and

$$\begin{aligned} \{|n\rangle\} &= |2 \uparrow_\pm\rangle \\ ||\langle n| c_{\uparrow\sigma}^\dagger |GS\rangle||^2 &= \frac{1}{4} (a_2 \mp a_1)^2 = \frac{1}{4} (1 \mp 2a_1 a_2) \\ \{E_n\} &= \pm t \end{aligned} \quad (\text{B.3.5})$$

for the first. The Greens function is therefore

$$G_{D,00}^\uparrow(\omega, T \rightarrow 0) = \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{2t}{\Delta}\right) \frac{\omega}{\omega^2 - \left(t - \frac{\Delta}{2}\right)^2} + \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{2t}{\Delta}\right) \frac{\omega}{\omega^2 - \left(t + \frac{\Delta}{2}\right)^2} = G_{D,00}^\downarrow(\omega, T \rightarrow 0). \quad (\text{B.3.6})$$

In the atomic limit ( $t = 0$ ), the Greens function simplifies to

$$G_{D,00}^\uparrow(\omega, T \rightarrow 0) \Big|_{\text{atomic}} = \frac{\omega}{\omega^2 - \frac{1}{4}U^2} \quad (\text{B.3.7})$$

In the atomic limit, the singly-occupied state has zero energy:

$$E_1(t=0) = \langle 1, 0 | \left( U\tau_{0\uparrow}\tau_{0\downarrow} + U\tau_{1\uparrow}\tau_{1\downarrow} \right) | 1, 0 \rangle = 0 \quad (\text{B.3.8})$$

We can write the atomic limit Greens function in terms of this energy and the self energy:

$$G_{D,00}^\uparrow(\omega, T \rightarrow 0) \Big|_{\text{atomic}} = \frac{1}{\omega - E_1(t=0) - \Sigma(t=0)} = \frac{1}{\omega - 0 - \frac{U^2}{4\omega}} \quad (\text{B.3.9})$$

The self energy in the atomic limit can be read off as

$$\Sigma(t=0) = \frac{U^2}{4\omega} \quad (\text{B.3.10})$$

The site local spectral function can also be calculated from the local Greens function:

$$\begin{aligned} A(0 \uparrow, \omega) &= -\frac{1}{\pi} \text{Im} G_{D,00}^\uparrow(\omega) \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{4} - \frac{t}{\Delta}\right) \left[ \delta\left(\omega - \frac{1}{2}\Delta - t\right) + \delta\left(\omega + \frac{1}{2}\Delta + t\right) \right] \\ &\quad + \left(\frac{1}{4} + \frac{t}{\Delta}\right) \left[ \delta\left(\omega - \frac{1}{2}\Delta + t\right) + \delta\left(\omega + \frac{1}{2}\Delta - t\right) \right] \\ &= A(0 \downarrow, \omega). \end{aligned} \quad (\text{B.3.11})$$

Finally, the inter-site Greens function for the Hubbard dimer is given by

$$G_{D,01}^\uparrow(\omega, T \rightarrow 0) = \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{2t}{\Delta}\right) \frac{t - \frac{\Delta}{2}}{\omega^2 - \left(t - \frac{\Delta}{2}\right)^2} + \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{2t}{\Delta}\right) \frac{t + \frac{\Delta}{2}}{\omega^2 - \left(t + \frac{\Delta}{2}\right)^2} = G_{D,01}^\downarrow(\omega, T \rightarrow 0). \quad (\text{B.3.12})$$

Using the diagonal and off-diagonal real space Greens functions, we can now compute the momentum-space Greens functions. The two momentum states are  $ka = 0, \pi$ . By Fourier transforming, these two Greens functions can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} G(k=0, \sigma) &= \sum_r e^{ikr} G(r, \sigma) = G(r=0, \sigma) + G(r=a, \sigma) = \frac{1/2 + 2t/\Delta}{\omega - t + \Delta/2} + \frac{1/2 - 2t/\Delta}{\omega - t - \Delta/2} \\ G(k=\pi, \sigma) &= \sum_r e^{ikr} G(r, \sigma) = G(r=0, \sigma) - G(r=a, \sigma) = \frac{1/2 + 2t/\Delta}{\omega + t - \Delta/2} + \frac{1/2 - 2t/\Delta}{\omega + t + \Delta/2} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{B.3.13})$$

## B.4 Contributions of various excitations to the site local spectral function

The site local spectral function is

$$A(0 \uparrow, \omega) = \left( \frac{1}{4} - \frac{t}{\Delta} \right) \left[ \delta\left(\omega - \frac{\Delta}{2} - t\right) + \delta\left(\omega + \frac{\Delta}{2} + t\right) \right] + \left( \frac{1}{4} + \frac{t}{\Delta} \right) \left[ \delta\left(\omega - \frac{\Delta}{2} + t\right) + \delta\left(\omega + \frac{\Delta}{2} - t\right) \right]$$

If the eigenstates of the  $N = 1, S^z = -\frac{1}{2}$  sector are  $|1\pm \downarrow\rangle$  and those of  $N = 3, S^z = \frac{1}{2}$  sector are  $|3\pm \uparrow\rangle$ , this spectral function originates from the expression:

$$\begin{aligned} A(0 \uparrow, \omega) &= \langle 1 \downarrow_- | c_{0\uparrow} | \text{GS} \rangle \delta\left(\omega + \frac{\Delta}{2} + t\right) + \langle 2 \uparrow_+ | c_{0\uparrow}^\dagger | \text{GS} \rangle \delta\left(\omega - \frac{\Delta}{2} - t\right) \\ &\quad + \langle 1 \downarrow_+ | c_{0\uparrow} | \text{GS} \rangle \delta\left(\omega + \frac{\Delta}{2} - t\right) + \langle 2 \uparrow_- | c_{0\uparrow}^\dagger | \text{GS} \rangle \delta\left(\omega - \frac{\Delta}{2} + t\right) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{B.4.1})$$

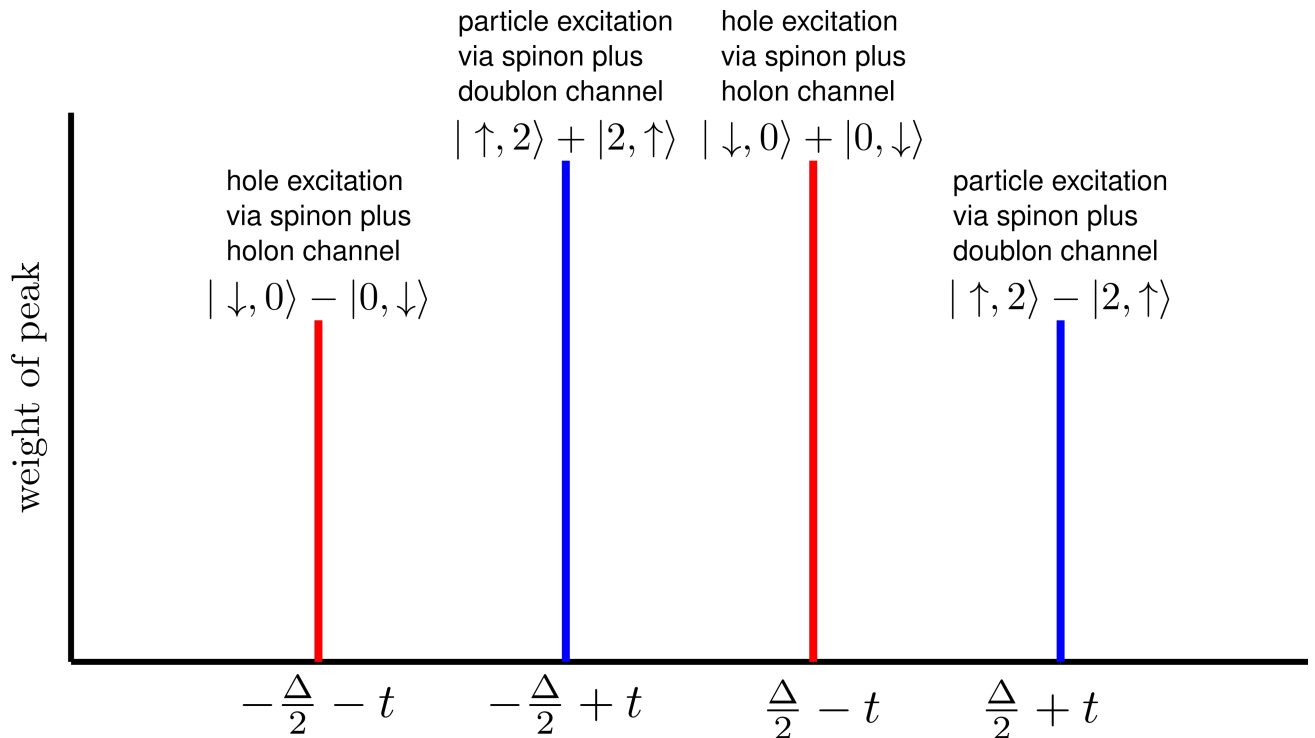


Figure B.1: Position, weight and nature of each of the peaks in the Hubbard dimer site local spectral function



## Appendix C

# Simple results for the Greens functions

### C.1 Relation between single-particle Greens function and the Greens function operator ( $T = 0$ )

The single-particle Greens function is defined as the solution of the equation:

$$(i\partial_t - H(\vec{r})) G(\vec{r}, \vec{r}', t) = \delta(\vec{r} - \vec{r}') \quad (\text{C.1.1})$$

and is given by the expression

$$G(\vec{r}, \vec{r}', t) = -i\theta(t) \left\langle \left\{ c(\vec{r}, t) c^\dagger(\vec{r}', 0) \right\} \right\rangle \quad (\text{C.1.2})$$

This solution can be written in the Lehmann-Kallen representation and at  $T = 0$  as

$$G(\vec{r}\sigma, \vec{r}'\sigma, \omega) = \sum_n \left[ \frac{\langle GS | c(\vec{r}, \sigma) | n \rangle \langle n | c^\dagger(\vec{r}', \sigma) | GS \rangle}{\omega + E_{GS} - E_n} + \frac{\langle GS | c^\dagger(\vec{r}', \sigma) | n \rangle \langle n | c(\vec{r}, \sigma) | GS \rangle}{\omega + E_n - E_{GS}} \right] \quad (\text{C.1.3})$$

The sum is over the exact eigenstates of the Hamiltonian. In what follows, we will represent  $\vec{r}, \sigma \equiv \nu$  and  $\vec{r}', \sigma \equiv \nu'$ .

$$\begin{aligned} G(\nu, \nu', \omega) &= \sum_n \left[ \frac{\langle GS | c(\nu) | n \rangle \langle n | c^\dagger(\nu') | GS \rangle}{\omega + E_{GS} - E_n} + \frac{\langle GS | c^\dagger(\nu') | n \rangle \langle n | c(\nu) | GS \rangle}{\omega + E_n - E_{GS}} \right] \\ &= \langle GS | c(\nu) \frac{1}{\omega + E_{GS} - H} c^\dagger(\nu') | GS \rangle + \langle GS | c^\dagger(\nu') \frac{1}{\omega + H - E_{GS}} c(\nu) | GS \rangle \end{aligned} \quad (\text{C.1.4})$$

If we now define a Greens function operator

$$\mathcal{G}(\omega, H) = \frac{1}{\omega - (H - E_{GS})} \quad (\text{C.1.5})$$

we can write the single-particle Greens function as a sum of the matrix elements of this operator:

$$G(\nu, \nu', \omega) = \langle \nu | \mathcal{G}(\omega, H) | \nu' \rangle - \langle \bar{\nu}' | \mathcal{G}(-\omega, H) | \bar{\nu} \rangle = \mathcal{G}(\omega, H)_{\nu, \nu'} - \mathcal{G}(-\omega, H)_{\bar{\nu}', \bar{\nu}} \quad (\text{C.1.6})$$

where we have defined the states  $|\nu\rangle \equiv c^\dagger(\nu) | GS \rangle$  and  $|\bar{\nu}\rangle \equiv c(\nu) | GS \rangle$ . The two matrix elements can also be represented in their individual spectral representations:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{G}(\omega, H)_{\nu, \nu'} &= \sum_n \frac{\langle GS | c(\nu) | n \rangle \langle n | c^\dagger(\nu') | GS \rangle}{\omega + E_{GS} - E_n} \\ \mathcal{G}(\omega, H)_{\bar{\nu}', \bar{\nu}} &= \sum_n \frac{\langle GS | c^\dagger(\nu') | n \rangle \langle n | c(\nu) | GS \rangle}{\omega + E_{GS} - E_n} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{C.1.7})$$

## C.2 Writing single-particle excitations of ground state in terms of $N = 3, S^z = \frac{1}{2}$ eigenstates

The excited state  $c_{0\uparrow}^\dagger |\text{GS}\rangle$  can actually be written in terms of the  $N = 3, S^z = +\frac{1}{2}$  eigenstates  $|3\pm \uparrow\rangle$  defined in table B.1.

$$|3\pm \uparrow\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|\uparrow, 2\rangle \pm |2, \uparrow\rangle), \quad H^D |3\pm \uparrow\rangle = \pm t |3\pm \uparrow\rangle \quad (\text{C.2.1})$$

In terms of these eigenstates, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} c_{0\uparrow}^\dagger |\text{GS}\rangle &= c_{0\uparrow}^\dagger [a_1 |SS\rangle + a_2 |CT\rangle] \\ &= a_2 \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |\uparrow, 2\rangle - a_1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |2, \uparrow\rangle \\ &= (x + y) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |\uparrow, 2\rangle + (x - y) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |2, \uparrow\rangle \\ &= x |3+ \uparrow\rangle + y |3- \uparrow\rangle \end{aligned} \quad (\text{C.2.2})$$

where  $x + y \equiv a_2$  and  $x - y \equiv -a_1$ . Similarly, for the other site excitation, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} c_{1\uparrow}^\dagger |\text{GS}\rangle &= c_{1\uparrow}^\dagger [a_1 |SS\rangle + a_2 |CT\rangle] \\ &= a_2 \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |2, \uparrow\rangle - a_1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |\uparrow, 2\rangle \\ &= (x + y) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |2, \uparrow\rangle + (x - y) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |\uparrow, 2\rangle \\ &= x |3+ \uparrow\rangle - y |3- \uparrow\rangle \end{aligned} \quad (\text{C.2.3})$$

Solving for  $x$  and  $y$  gives

$$x = \frac{a_2 - a_1}{2}, \quad y = \frac{a_2 + a_1}{2} \quad (\text{C.2.4})$$

Similarly, we can also write the single-hole excitation  $c_{0\uparrow} |GS\rangle$  in terms of the  $N = 1, S^z = -\frac{1}{2}$  eigenstates,  $|1\pm \downarrow\rangle$ :

$$|1\pm \downarrow\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|\downarrow, 0\rangle \pm |0, \downarrow\rangle), \quad H^D |1\pm \downarrow\rangle = \mp t |1\pm \downarrow\rangle \quad (\text{C.2.5})$$

$$\begin{aligned} c_{0\uparrow} |GS\rangle &= a_1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |0, \downarrow\rangle + a_2 \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |\downarrow, 0\rangle = y |1+ \downarrow\rangle + x |1- \downarrow\rangle \\ c_{1\uparrow} |GS\rangle &= a_1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |\downarrow, 0\rangle + a_2 \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |0, \downarrow\rangle = y |1+ \downarrow\rangle - x |1- \downarrow\rangle \end{aligned} \quad (\text{C.2.6})$$

## C.3 Matrix elements of $G^{-1}$ between single-particle momentum excitations, for the Hubbard dimer

$$G^{-1} \equiv \omega + E_{\text{GS}} - H_D \quad (\text{C.3.1})$$

The particle excitation momentum space kets are  $|k_0\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|0\rangle + |1\rangle)$ ,  $|k_\pi\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|0\rangle - |1\rangle)$ . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} (G^{-1})_{k_0 k_0} &= \frac{1}{2} (\langle 0| + \langle 1|) (\omega + E_{\text{GS}} - H_D) (|0\rangle + |1\rangle) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (2x \langle +|) (\omega + E_{\text{GS}} - H_D) (2x |+\rangle) \\ &= 2x^2 (\omega + E_{\text{GS}} - t) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{C.3.2})$$

At the final step, we used  $\langle +, +\rangle = 1$  and  $\langle +|H_D|+\rangle = t$ .

## Appendix D

# Zero temperature Greens function in frequency domain

The impurity retarded Green's function (assuming the Hamiltonian to be time-independent, which it is) is defined as

$$G_{dd}^{\sigma}(t) = -i\theta(t) \left\langle \left\{ \mathcal{O}_{\sigma}(t), \mathcal{O}_{\sigma}^{\dagger} \right\} \right\rangle \quad (\text{D.0.1})$$

where the average  $\langle \rangle$  is over a canonical ensemble at temperature  $T$ , and  $\mathcal{O}_{\sigma} = c_{d\sigma} + S_d^{-} c_{0\bar{\sigma}} + S_d^z c_{0\sigma}$  is the excitation whose spectral function we are interested in. The excitations defined in  $\mathcal{O}$  incorporates both single-particle excitations brought about by the hybridisation as well as two-particle spin excitations brought about by the spin-exchange term. What follows is a standard calculation where we write the Green's function in the Lehmann-Kallen representation. The ensemble average for an arbitrary operator  $\hat{M}$  can be written in terms of the exact eigenstates of the fixed point Hamiltonian:

$$H^* |n\rangle = E_n^* |n\rangle, \quad \langle \hat{M} \rangle \equiv \frac{1}{Z} \sum_n \langle n | \hat{M} | n \rangle e^{-\beta E_n^*} \quad (\text{D.0.2})$$

where  $Z = \sum_n e^{-\beta E_n^*}$  is the fixed point partition function and  $\{|n\rangle\}$  is the set of eigenfunctions of the fixed point Hamiltonian. We can therefore write

$$\begin{aligned} & \left\langle \left\{ \mathcal{O}_{\sigma}(t), \mathcal{O}_{\sigma}^{\dagger} \right\} \right\rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{Z} \sum_m e^{-\beta E_m} \langle m | \left\{ \mathcal{O}_{\sigma}(t), \mathcal{O}_{\sigma}^{\dagger} \right\} | m \rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{Z} \sum_{m,n} e^{-\beta E_m} \langle m | \left( \mathcal{O}_{\sigma}(t) | n \rangle \langle n | \mathcal{O}_{\sigma}^{\dagger} + \mathcal{O}_{\sigma}^{\dagger} | n \rangle \langle n | \mathcal{O}_{\sigma}(t) \right) | m \rangle \quad \left[ \sum_n |n\rangle \langle n| = 1 \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{Z} \sum_{m,n} e^{-\beta E_m} \langle m | \left( e^{iH^*t} \mathcal{O}_{\sigma} e^{-iH^*t} | n \rangle \langle n | \mathcal{O}_{\sigma}^{\dagger} + \mathcal{O}_{\sigma}^{\dagger} | n \rangle \langle n | e^{iH^*t} \mathcal{O}_{\sigma} e^{-iH^*t} \right) | m \rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{Z} \sum_{m,n} e^{-\beta E_m} \left( e^{i(E_m - E_n)t} \langle m | \mathcal{O}_{\sigma} | n \rangle \langle n | \mathcal{O}_{\sigma}^{\dagger} | m \rangle + e^{i(E_n - E_m)t} \langle m | \mathcal{O}_{\sigma}^{\dagger} | n \rangle \langle n | \mathcal{O}_{\sigma} | m \rangle \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{Z} \sum_{m,n} e^{i(E_m - E_n)t} || \langle m | \mathcal{O}_{\sigma} | n \rangle ||^2 \left( e^{-\beta E_m} + e^{-\beta E_n} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{D.0.3})$$

The time-domain impurity Green's function can thus be written as (this is the so-called Lehmann-Kallen representation)

$$G_{dd}^{\sigma} = -i\theta(t) \frac{1}{Z} \sum_{m,n} e^{i(E_m - E_n)t} || \langle m | \mathcal{O}_{\sigma} | n \rangle ||^2 \left( e^{-\beta E_m} + e^{-\beta E_n} \right) \quad (\text{D.0.4})$$

We are interested in the frequency domain form.

$$\begin{aligned} G_{dd}^\sigma(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt e^{i\omega t} G_{dd}^\sigma(t) \\ &= \frac{1}{Z} \sum_{m,n} ||\langle m | \mathcal{O}_\sigma | n \rangle||^2 \left( e^{-\beta E_m} + e^{-\beta E_n} \right) (-i) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt \theta(t) e^{i(\omega + E_m - E_n)t} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{D.0.5})$$

To evaluate the time-integral, we will use the integral representation of the Heaviside function:

$$\theta(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \lim_{\eta \rightarrow 0^+} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{x - i\eta} e^{ixt} dx \quad (\text{D.0.6})$$

With this definition, the integral in  $G_{dd}^\sigma(\omega)$  becomes

$$\begin{aligned} (-i) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt \theta(t) e^{i(\omega + E_m - E_n)t} &= (-i) \frac{1}{2\pi i} \lim_{\eta \rightarrow 0^+} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx \frac{1}{x - i\eta} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt e^{i(\omega + E_m - E_n + x)t} \\ &= (-i) \frac{1}{2\pi i} \lim_{\eta \rightarrow 0^+} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx \frac{1}{x - i\eta} 2\pi \delta(\omega + E_m - E_n + x) \\ &= (-i) \frac{1}{i} \lim_{\eta \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{-1}{\omega + E_m - E_n - i\eta} \\ &= \frac{1}{\omega + E_m - E_n} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{D.0.7})$$

The frequency-domain Green's function is thus

$$G_{dd}^\sigma(\omega) = \frac{1}{Z} \sum_{m,n} ||\langle m | \mathcal{O}_\sigma | n \rangle||^2 \left( e^{-\beta E_m} + e^{-\beta E_n} \right) \frac{1}{\omega + E_m - E_n} \quad (\text{D.0.8})$$

The zero temperature Green's function is obtained by taking the limit of  $\beta \rightarrow \infty$ . In both the partition function as well as inside the summation, the only term that will survive is the exponential of the ground state energy  $E_0$ .

$$Z \equiv \sum_m e^{-\beta E_m} \implies \lim_{\beta \rightarrow \infty} Z = d_0 e^{-\beta E_0}, \quad E_0 \equiv \min \{E_n\}$$

where  $d_0$  is the degeneracy of the ground state. The Greens function then simplifies to

$$\begin{aligned} G_{dd}^\sigma(\omega, \beta \rightarrow \infty) &= \frac{1}{d_0 e^{-\beta E_0}} \sum_{m,n} ||\langle m | \mathcal{O}_\sigma | n \rangle||^2 \left[ e^{-\beta E_m} \delta_{E_m, E_0} + e^{-\beta E_n} \delta_{E_n, E_0} \right] \frac{1}{\omega + E_m - E_n} \\ &= \frac{1}{d_0} \sum_{n,0} \left[ ||\langle 0 | \mathcal{O}_\sigma | n \rangle||^2 \frac{1}{\omega + E_0 - E_n} + ||\langle n | \mathcal{O}_\sigma | 0 \rangle||^2 \frac{1}{\omega - E_0 + E_n} \right] \end{aligned} \quad (\text{D.0.9})$$

The label 0 sums over all states  $|0\rangle$  with energy  $E_0$ . The spectral function is the imaginary part of this Green's function. To extract the imaginary part, we insert an infinitesimal imaginary part in the denominator:

$$G_{dd}^\sigma(\omega, \eta) = \frac{1}{d_0} \lim_{\eta \rightarrow 0^-} \sum_{n,0} \left[ ||\langle 0 | \mathcal{O}_\sigma | n \rangle||^2 \frac{1}{\omega + E_0 - E_n + i\eta} + ||\langle n | \mathcal{O}_\sigma | 0 \rangle||^2 \frac{1}{\omega - E_0 + E_n + i\eta} \right] \quad (\text{D.0.10})$$

The spectral function at zero temperature can then be written as

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{A}(\omega) &= -\frac{1}{\pi} \text{Im} [G_{dd}^\sigma(\omega)] \\ &= \frac{1}{d_0} \frac{1}{\pi} \text{Im} \left[ \lim_{\eta \rightarrow 0^-} \sum_{n,0} \left( \frac{-i\eta ||\langle 0 | \mathcal{O}_\sigma | n \rangle||^2}{(\omega + E_0 - E_n)^2 + \eta^2} + \frac{-i\eta ||\langle n | \mathcal{O}_\sigma | 0 \rangle||^2}{(\omega - E_0 + E_n)^2 + \eta^2} \right) \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{d_0} \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{n,0} \left[ ||\langle 0 | \mathcal{O}_\sigma | n \rangle||^2 \pi \delta(\omega + E_0 - E_n) + ||\langle n | \mathcal{O}_\sigma | 0 \rangle||^2 \pi \delta(\omega - E_0 + E_n) \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{d_0} \sum_{n,0} \left[ ||\langle 0 | \mathcal{O}_\sigma | n \rangle||^2 \delta(\omega + E_0 - E_n) + ||\langle n | \mathcal{O}_\sigma | 0 \rangle||^2 \delta(\omega - E_0 + E_n) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (\text{D.0.11})$$

## Appendix E

# Topological interpretation of the Wilson ratio

From the Friedel sum rule[30], we can relate the phase shift  $\delta(0)$  due to scattering (at the Fermi surface) off a local impurity to the number of electrons bound in the potential well produced by that impurity:

$$\tilde{N} = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \text{Tr} \ln S(0) = \int_{\Gamma} dz \partial_z \frac{1}{2\pi i} \text{Tr} \ln S(0) \quad (\text{E.0.1})$$

From the optical theorem, we can write

$$S = 1 + TG_0 = \frac{G}{G_0} \quad [G = G_0 + G_0 T G_0] \quad (\text{E.0.2})$$

This allows us to write [8]

$$\tilde{N} = \int_{\Gamma} dz \partial_z \frac{1}{2\pi i} \text{Tr} \ln \frac{G}{G_0} \quad (\text{E.0.3})$$

Since  $\text{Tr} \ln \hat{O} = \sum_{\lambda} \ln O_{\lambda} = \ln \prod_{\lambda} O_{\lambda} = \ln \text{Det} \hat{O}$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{N} &= \int_{\Gamma} dz \partial_z \frac{1}{2\pi i} \ln \text{Det} \frac{G}{G_0} \\ &= - \int_{\Gamma} dz \partial_z \frac{1}{2\pi i} \ln \frac{\text{Det} G_0}{\text{Det} G} \\ &\equiv - \int_{\Gamma} dz \partial_z \frac{1}{2\pi i} \ln D \\ &= - \int_{\Gamma(D)} \frac{dD}{D} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{E.0.4})$$

From the work of Seki and Yunoki [31], we know that this quantity is essentially the winding number of the curve  $\Gamma(D)$  in the complex plane spanned by the real and imaginary parts of  $D$ , and is equal to the change in Luttinger's volume  $V_L$  at  $T = 0$ .

$$\tilde{N} = - \int_{\Gamma(D)} \frac{dD}{D} = -\Delta V_L \quad (\text{E.0.5})$$

The incoming electrons can have  $\sigma = \uparrow, \downarrow$ . Since the impurity singlet ground state is rotationally invariant, we have  $\delta_{\uparrow} = \delta_{\downarrow} = \delta(0)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{N} &= \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{\sigma} \delta_{\sigma}(0) \\ \implies \delta(0) &= \frac{\pi}{2} \tilde{N} = -\frac{\pi}{2} \Delta V_L \end{aligned} \quad (\text{E.0.6})$$

$$\begin{aligned} R &= 1 + \sin^2 \left( \frac{\pi}{2} \tilde{N} \right) \\ &= 1 + \sin^2 \left( \frac{\pi}{2} \Delta V_L \right) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{E.0.7})$$

We note that this connection between  $R$  and  $\Delta V_L$  has not been obtained in the existing literature thus far. In the unitary limit,  $\delta(0) = \frac{\pi}{2}$ , giving  $\Delta V_L = -1 = -\tilde{N}$  [22] (i.e., one electronic state from the impurity has been absorbed into the Luttinger volume of the conduction bath), such that  $R = 2$  in this limit. In this way, we see that a change in the topological quantum number  $\tilde{N}$  causes the well known renormalisation of the Wilson ratio  $R$  from its non-interacting value (1) to the value (2) obtained for the local Fermi liquid [20].

# Bibliography

- [1] N. F. Mott, "The basis of the electron theory of metals, with special reference to the transition metals," *Proceedings of the Physical Society. Section A*, vol. 62, pp. 416–422, jul 1949.
- [2] K. Held, R. Peters, and A. Toschi, "Poor man's understanding of kinks originating from strong electronic correlations," *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, vol. 110, p. 246402, Jun 2013.
- [3] R. M. Martin, L. Reining, and D. M. Ceperley, *Interacting Electrons: Theory and Computational Approaches*. Cambridge University Press, 2016.
- [4] A. Georges and G. Kotliar, "Hubbard model in infinite dimensions," *Physical Review B*, vol. 45, no. 12, p. 6479, 1992.
- [5] A. Georges, G. Kotliar, W. Krauth, and M. J. Rozenberg, "Dynamical mean-field theory of strongly correlated fermion systems and the limit of infinite dimensions," *Reviews of Modern Physics*, vol. 68, no. 1, p. 13, 1996.
- [6] A. Mukherjee and S. Lal, "Scaling theory for mott–hubbard transitions: I.  $t = 0$  phase diagram of the 1/2-filled hubbard model," *New Journal of Physics*, vol. 22, p. 063007, jun 2020.
- [7] A. Mukherjee and S. Lal, "Scaling theory for mott–hubbard transitions-II: quantum criticality of the doped mott insulator," *New Journal of Physics*, vol. 22, p. 063008, jun 2020.
- [8] A. Mukherjee and S. Lal, "Unitary renormalisation group for correlated electrons-i: a tensor network approach," *Nuclear Physics B*, vol. 960, p. 115170, 2020.
- [9] A. Mukherjee and S. Lal, "Unitary renormalisation group for correlated electrons-ii: insights on fermionic criticality," *Nuclear Physics B*, vol. 960, p. 115163, 2020.
- [10] S. Patra and S. Lal, "Origin of topological order in a cooper-pair insulator," *Phys. Rev. B*, vol. 104, p. 144514, Oct 2021.
- [11] S. Pal, A. Mukherjee, and S. Lal, "Correlated spin liquids in the quantum kagome antiferromagnet at finite field: a renormalization group analysis," *New Journal of Physics*, vol. 21, p. 023019, feb 2019.
- [12] H. R. Krishna-murthy, J. W. Wilkins, and K. G. Wilson, "Renormalization-group approach to the anderson model of dilute magnetic alloys. i. static properties for the symmetric case," *Phys. Rev. B*, vol. 21, pp. 1003–1043, Feb 1980.
- [13] K. G. Wilson, "The renormalization group: Critical phenomena and the kondo problem," *Rev. Mod. Phys.*, vol. 47, pp. 773–840, Oct 1975.
- [14] R. Bulla, T. Costi, and T. Pruschke, "Numerical renormalisation group method for quantum impurity systems," *Rev. Mod. Phys.*, vol. 80, p. 395, 2008.
- [15] P. W. Anderson, "Random-phase approximation in the theory of superconductivity," *Physical Review*, vol. 112, no. 6, p. 1900, 1958.
- [16] Y. Nambu, "Quasi-particles and gauge invariance in the theory of superconductivity," *Phys. Rev.*, vol. 117, pp. 648–663, Feb 1960.
- [17] R. Žitko and J. Bonča, "Spin-charge separation and simultaneous spin and charge kondo effect," *Phys. Rev. B*, vol. 74, p. 224411, Dec 2006.
- [18] J. Schrieffer and P.A. Wolff, "Relation between the anderson and kondo hamiltonians," *Phys. Rev.*, vol. 149, p. 491, 1966.

- [19] D. C. Langreth, "Friedel sum rule for anderson's model of localized impurity states," *Phys. Rev.*, vol. 150, pp. 516–518, Oct 1966.
- [20] P. Nozieres, "A "fermi-liquid" description of the kondo problem at low temperatures," *Journal of Low Temperature Physics*, vol. 17, p. 31, 1974.
- [21] M. Oshikawa, "Topological approach to luttinger's theorem and the fermi surface of a kondo lattice," *Physical Review Letters*, vol. 84, no. 15, p. 3370, 2000.
- [22] R. M. Martin, "Fermi-surface sum rule and its consequences for periodic kondo and mixed-valence systems," *Physical Review Letters*, vol. 48, no. 5, p. 362, 1982.
- [23] P. Phillips, "Mottness," *Annals of Physics*, vol. 321, no. 7, pp. 1634–1650, 2006.
- [24] D. E. Logan, A. P. Tucker, and M. R. Galpin, "Common non-fermi liquid phases in quantum impurity physics," *Phys. Rev. B*, vol. 90, p. 075150, Aug 2014.
- [25] D. E. Logan and M. R. Galpin, "Mott insulators and the doping-induced mott transition within DMFT: exact results for the one-band hubbard model," *Journal of Physics: Condensed Matter*, vol. 28, p. 025601, dec 2015.
- [26] W. Metzner and D. Vollhardt, "Correlated lattice fermions in  $d = \infty$  dimensions," *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, vol. 62, pp. 324–327, Jan 1989.
- [27] A. Georges and G. Kotliar, "Hubbard model in infinite dimensions," *Phys. Rev. B*, vol. 45, pp. 6479–6483, Mar 1992.
- [28] T. Pruschke, D. L. Cox, and M. Jarrell, "Hubbard model at infinite dimensions: Thermodynamic and transport properties," *Phys. Rev. B*, vol. 47, pp. 3553–3565, Feb 1993.
- [29] E. Müller-Hartmann, "Correlated fermions on a lattice in high dimensions," *Zeitschrift für Physik B Condensed Matter*, vol. 74, pp. 507–512, Dec 1989.
- [30] J. Langer and V. Ambegaokar, "Friedel sum rule for a system of interacting electrons," *Physical Review*, vol. 121, no. 4, p. 1090, 1961.
- [31] K. Seki and S. Yunoki, "Topological interpretation of the luttinger theorem," *Physical Review B*, vol. 96, no. 8, p. 085124, 2017.